Yoga for the Modern Age

THE PATH OF PERFECTION

His Divine Grace

A.C. Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda

FOUNDER-ĀCĀRYA OF THE INTERNATIONAL SOCIETY FOR KRISHNA CONSCIOUSNESS
AC BHARATIVEDANTA SWAMI PRABHUPADA

THE PATH OF PERFECT

Yoga for the Modern Age
This is a book about yoga. It's not about what most people think yoga is. For most of us, the term conjures in the mind an image of some skinny, half-naked fellow contorted into a human pretzel, or perhaps a room full of corpulent matrons in black leotards, struggling to stand on their heads in hopes of improving their health, losing weight, or increasing their waning sexual abilities. What has, in modern times, been reduced to a commercially exploited technique of bodily agility and pseudomeditation is, in reality, an ancient and profoundly transforming process of self-realization and spiritual development.

The original science of yoga is expounded in the most celebrated of India's ancient spiritual classics, the Bhagavad-gītā. The Gītā takes the form of an extraordinary dialogue between Lord Kṛṣṇa, the Supreme Personality of Godhead, and His disciple Arjuna, a warrior. In what has been described by one contemporary psychologist as "a remarkable psychotherapeutic session," Lord Kṛṣṇa reveals to Arjuna how, through the practice of yoga, one can live within this world yet be transcendental to it, completely free from illusion and anxiety, and attain a state of "boundless transcendental happiness."

The Path of Perfection chronicles a historic series of talks on the science of yoga by His Divine Grace A. C. Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda, one of the (continued on back flap)
His Divine Grace A. C. Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda

Founder-Ācārya of the International Society for Krishna Consciousness
"Did Caitanya Mahāprabhu sit down to meditate? No, when He appeared five hundred years ago in India, He was always dancing and chanting Hare Kṛṣṇa. The spirit soul is naturally active. How can we sit down silently and do nothing? It is not possible. No one really wants to sit down and meditate. Why should we? We’re meant for positive activity, for recreation, for pleasure. In Kṛṣṇa consciousness, our recreation is dancing and chanting, and when we get tired we take prasāda, spiritual food. Is dancing difficult? Is chanting difficult? It is natural to enjoy music and dancing and palatable vegetarian foods. These are our recreations, and this is our method of meditation. So this yoga system is not at all laborious. It is simply recreation, susukham—very happy. It is natural, automatic, and spontaneous. It is our real life in the spiritual world." (pp. 8–9)
PLATE TWO

"Pleasure is the ultimate goal of yoga. This pleasure is not a solitary affair; rather, it is experienced as part of the soul’s eternal spiritual relationship with the Supreme Soul, Kṛṣṇa. The yogi seeking to attain this perfectional stage therefore meditates upon Kṛṣṇa’s associates in the spiritual world, the chief of whom is Rādhā, His eternal consort and the personification of His spiritual pleasure potency. The name Rādhā is derived from a Sanskrit word meaning “to worship,” and perfect yogis follow Her example by constantly meditating upon Kṛṣṇa and dedicating their energies unto Him." (pp. 9–10)
"One who has developed love for Kṛṣṇa sees the Lord always within his heart. At this stage, Lord Kṛṣṇa never disappears from the sight of the devotee, nor does the devotee ever lose sight of the Lord. In the case of a yogī who sees the Lord as Paramātmā, the Supersoul within the heart, the same applies. Such a yogī turns into a pure devotee and cannot bear to live for a moment without seeing the Lord within himself. This is the real process by which we can see God. God is not our order supplier. We cannot demand, 'Come and show Yourself.' No, we first have to qualify ourselves. Then we can see God at every moment and everywhere. A yogī who is practicing meditation on the Supersoul sees within himself the plenary portion of Kṛṣṇa as Viṣṇu—with four hands, holding conchshell, wheel, club, and lotus flower." (p. 84)
"The *yogi* finds out where Lord Viṣṇu is seated within his heart, and when he finds this form there, he concentrates on Him. The *yogi* should know that this Viṣṇu is not different from Kṛṣṇa. Kṛṣṇa in this form of Supersoul is situated in everyone's heart. Furthermore, there is no difference between the innumerable Supersouls present in the innumerable hearts of living entities. For example, there is only one sun in the sky, but this sun may be reflected in millions of buckets of water. The sun is one, but it is reflected countless times. According to the *Vedas*, the living entities are innumerable; there is no possibility of counting them. Just as the sun can be reflected in countless buckets of water, Viṣṇu, the Supreme Personality of Godhead, can live in each and everyone's heart. It is this form on which the *yogi* concentrates."

(PP. 86-87)
PLATE FIVE  "Purification of consciousness is the purpose of the yoga system. At death, the finer elements of our bodies (mind, intelligence, and ego), which, combined, are called consciousness, carry the small particle of spirit soul to another body to suffer or enjoy, according to one's work." (p. 101)

PLATE SIX  "One's thoughts and actions in one's present life determine the type of body one will receive in one's next life. If one likes to eat meat, one may get the body of a tiger. One who is gluttonous may get the body of a pig. If one takes pleasure in exposing one's body, one may get the body of a tree, which must stand without clothing in all types of weather. Or if one likes to sleep, one may get the body of a bear."  (pp. 101-2)
PLATE SEVEN

“The material world is like a vast ocean of death and suffering, and the living beings floundering in this ocean are all controlled by Durgā, the personification of the Supreme Lord’s material energy. Durgā carries a trident, which represents the threefold miseries of life—miseries caused by the mind and body, miseries caused by other living creatures, and miseries caused by the forces of nature. By practicing bhakti-yoga, pure devotion to Kṛṣṇa, one can free oneself from Durgā’s superintendence and return to the spiritual world.” (pp. 116–17)
“Hatha-yoga, when practiced according to the original instructions found in the Vedas of India, has little in common with the watered-down yoga systems now taught in the West. The yogi was required to leave his home and retire to the forest, where, seated upon a deerskin mat, he would hold postures and meditate not for fifteen minutes or half an hour but for years on end. He would discipline himself to endure all the physical discomforts caused by the weather, and even when approached by dangerous jungle animals such as the tiger, he would remain fearless. Finally, he had to raise his soul on his life airs to the top of his skull and cause the soul to leave the body at an astrologically auspicious moment. Today, no one can practice real hatha-yoga. Therefore, in Bhagavad-gītā Lord Kṛṣṇa recommends bhakti-yoga, which is based on hearing and chanting the Hare Kṛṣṇa mantra. Anyone, even a child, can practice this simple, effective yoga system.” (pp. 150–51)
Yoga for the Modern Age

The Path of

Perfection
BOOKS by
His Divine Grace
A. C. Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda

Bhagavad-gītā As It Is
Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam, cantos 1–10, (29 vols.)
Śrī Caitanya-caritāmṛta (17 vols.)
Teachings of Lord Caitanya
The Nectar of Devotion
The Nectar of Instruction
Śrī Īśopaniṣad
Easy Journey to Other Planets
Kṛṣṇa Consciousness: The Topmost Yoga System
Kṛṣṇa, the Supreme Personality of Godhead (3 vols.)
Perfect Questions, Perfect Answers
Dialectical Spiritualism—A Vedic View of Western Philosophy
Teachings of Lord Kapila, the Son of Devahūti
Transcendental Teachings of Prahlād Mahārāja
Teachings of Queen Kuntī
Kṛṣṇa, the Reservoir of Pleasure
The Science of Self-Realization
The Path of Perfection
Life Comes From Life
The Perfection of Yoga
Beyond Birth and Death
On the Way to Kṛṣṇa
Geetār-gan (Bengali)
Vairāgya-vidyā (Bengali)
Buddhi-yoga (Bengali)
Bhakti-ratna-boli (Bengali)
Rāja-vidyā: The King of Knowledge
Elevation to Kṛṣṇa Consciousness
Kṛṣṇa Consciousness: The Matchless Gift
Back to Godhead magazine (founder)

A complete catalog is available upon request.

Bhaktivedanta Book Trust
3764 Waseka Avenue
Los Angeles, California 90034
Readers interested in the subject matter of this book
are invited by the International Society for Krishna Consciousness
to visit any ISKCON center worldwide (see address list in back
of book) or to correspond with the Secretary:

International Society for Krishna Consciousness
3764 Watseka Avenue
Los Angeles, California 90034

Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>vii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Yoga as Action</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Mastering the Mind and Senses</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Learning How to See God</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Moderation in Yoga</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Determination and Steadiness in Yoga</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Perception of the Supersoul</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Yoga for the Modern Age</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Failure and Success in Yoga</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Destination After Death</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. The Path of Perfection</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Appendixes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Author</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>References</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glossary</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guide to Sanskrit Pronunciation</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Index</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Introduction

When we see a book with a title like *The Path of Perfection*, we may react with a bit of common skepticism: “Oh, another book claiming to give all the answers. One more do-it-yourself enlightenment scheme.” And certainly it seems that such skepticism is justified nowadays. Our natural desire for ultimate meaning, happiness, enlightenment, liberation, and salvation has become the most exploited commodity of the twentieth century; creating what one contemporary theologian termed a disastrous “seduction of the spirit.” This seduction is, indeed, the most tragic kind of exploitation. And the unfortunate consequence of this exploitation is a kind of deadening cynicism that discourages our search for self-fulfillment and a means to attain it.

The contemporary, thoughtful reader, weary of the many speculative, simplistic books cluttering the bookstore shelves, offering instant formulas for psychological or spiritual salvation, will find *The Path of Perfection* a welcome relief. Herein one will find a clear, intriguing explanation of the philosophy and practice of mankind’s oldest system of spiritual development—yoga.

Now, the word *yoga* may conjure up an image of some skinny fakir contorted like a human pretzel, or perhaps a room full of corpulent matrons in black leotards struggling to stand on their heads in hope of improving their health, losing weight, or increasing their sexual powers. This is not what we mean by *yoga*. Here we are referring to an ancient philosophy and meditational system that has been practiced by millions throughout the ages. What has, in modern times, been reduced to a commercially exploited technique of bodily agility and pseudomeditation was once a comprehensive and easily applied form of self-realization.

*The Path of Perfection* consists of a historic series of talks—elaborations on a previously published commentary—by His Divine Grace A. C. Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda (1896–1977) on India’s greatest spiritual classic, the *Bhagavad-gītā*. In these absorbing talks, Śrīla Prabhupāda explores deeply the philosophy of *yoga* as explained in the Sixth and Eighth Chapters of the *Gītā*, showing clearly how these timeless teachings apply to twentieth
century mankind. Srila Prabhupāda’s talks probe questions concerning the nature of consciousness, techniques of meditation, karma, death, reincarnation, and even spiritual ecstasy.

The Bhagavad-gītā, described by one contemporary psychologist as “a remarkable psychotherapeutic session,” appears to us in the form of an extraordinary dialogue between Lord Kṛṣṇa, the Supreme Personality of Godhead, and His warrior disciple Arjuna. Perplexed and confused about his identity and purpose, Arjuna turns to Kṛṣṇa, who reveals “the path of perfection” to His able student. The essence of Lord Kṛṣṇa’s teachings is that one must become a yogi, that is, one whose life is centered on the practice of yoga. And what is yoga? The Sanskrit word yoga literally means “union,” and refers to the union, in love, between the individual consciousness and the Supreme Consciousness, the self and the Superself, the soul and God. Yoga is, indeed, “the path of perfection,” because it aims toward this most exalted human attainment.

In the Bhagavad-gītā, we discover four basic varieties of yoga described. Karma-yoga refers to the process whereby one performs his work for God, without the selfish desire for personal gain. Jñāna-yoga is the process of elevation to spiritual consciousness through the cultivation of philosophical knowledge. The aṣṭāṅga-yoga system, of which the modern “hatha-yoga” is a watered-down version, is a mechanical, meditative practice meant to control the mind and senses and focus one’s concentration on the Supreme. These three yoga systems culminate in bhakti-yoga, the yoga of selfless, ecstatic, devotional love of God, Kṛṣṇa. Lord Kṛṣṇa Himself states in the last verse of Chapter Six, “Of all yogīs, he who always abides in Me with great faith, worshiping Me in transcendental loving service, is most intimately united with Me in yoga and is the highest of all.”

In The Path of Perfection, Śrīla Prabhupāda offers a brilliant summary of the methods of bhakti-yoga, revealing the universal applicability of this simple but all-inclusive form of yoga. He shows how even those who are entangled in the complexity and chaos of modern materialistic life can begin an uncomplicated practice which purifies the mind and puts one in touch with the Supreme Consciousness.
CHAPTER ONE

Yoga as Action

In the Sixth and Eighth Chapters of Bhagavad-gītā, Lord Śrī Kṛṣṇa, the Supreme Personality of Godhead, explains that the eightfold yoga system is a means to control the mind and senses. This method, however, is very difficult for people to perform, especially in this age of Kali, an age characterized by ignorance and chaos.

Although this eightfold yoga system is particularly recommended in the Sixth Chapter of Bhagavad-gītā, the Lord emphasizes that the process of karma-yoga, action in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, is superior. In this world, everyone acts to maintain his family, and everyone is working with a view to some self-interest, or personal sense gratification, be it concentrated or extended. But to act perfectly is to act in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, and this means acting detached from the fruits of labor.

It is our duty to act in Kṛṣṇa consciousness because we are constitutionally parts and parcels of the Supreme. The parts of the body work for the satisfaction of the entire body, not for the individual parts. The goal is the satisfaction of the complete whole. Similarly, the living entity should act for the satisfaction of the supreme whole, the Supreme Personality of Godhead, and not for his own personal satisfaction. One who can do this is the perfect sannyāsī and the perfect yogi. In the first verse of the Sixth Chapter of Bhagavad-gītā, the chapter dealing with sāṅkhya-yoga, Bhagavān Śrī Kṛṣṇa states,

\[
\text{anāśritaḥ karma-phalaṁ} \\
\text{kāryaṁ karma karoti yaḥ} \\
\text{sa sannyāsī ca yogi ca} \\
\text{na niragnir na cükriyaḥ}
\]
"One who is unattached to the fruits of his work and who works as he is obligated is in the renounced order of life, and he is the true mystic, not he who lights no fire and performs no work."

Sometimes sannyāsīs (renunciants) incorrectly think that they have become liberated from all material engagements and therefore no longer have to perform agni-hotra yajñas; or fire sacrifices. This is a mistake. Certain yajñas (sacrifices) have to be performed by everyone for purification. Since sannyāsīs are not traditionally required to perform yajñas, they sometimes think that they can attain liberation by ceasing to perform the ritualistic yajñas, but actually, unless one comes to the platform of Kṛṣṇa consciousness, there is no question of liberation. Those sannyāsīs who cease to perform yajñas are in fact acting out of self-interest, because their goal is to become one with the impersonal Brahmā. That is the ultimate goal of the impersonalists (Māyāvādīs), who have one major goal or demand: to become one with the supreme impersonal Being. The devotees have no such demands. They are simply satisfied in serving Kṛṣṇa for the satisfaction of Kṛṣṇa. They do not want anything in return. That is the characteristic of pure devotion.

It was Lord Caitanya Mahāprabhu who expressed this devotional attitude so succinctly:

\[na\ dhanam\ na\ janam\ na\ sundarairh\ kavirh\ va\ jagadihakamaye\ mama\ janmani\ janmanishvare\ bhavatadih\ bhaktir\ ahaityikTvayi\]

"O Almighty Lord, I have no desire to accumulate wealth, nor to enjoy beautiful women. Nor do I want any number of followers. What I want is only the causeless mercy of Your devotional service in my life, birth after birth." (Śikṣāṣṭaka 4) In essence, this is the bhakti-yoga system. There are many examples of the pure devotional attitude. Once Lord Nṛsiṁhadeva told Prahlāda Mahārāja, "My dear boy, you have suffered so much for Me. Whatever you want, ask for it." Being a pure devotee, Prahlāda Mahārāja refused to ask for anything. He said, "My dear Master, I am not carrying out mercantile business with You. I will not accept any remuneration for my service." This is the pure devotional attitude.

Yogīs and jñānis are demanding to become one with the Supreme because they have such bitter experience suffering the material pangs. They want to become one with the Lord because they are suffering in separation. A pure devotee, however, does not experience this. Although separate from the Lord, he fully enjoys the service of the Lord in separation. The desire to become one with the impersonal Brahmā, or to merge with God, is certainly greater than any material desire, but this is not without self-interest. Similarly, the mystic yogī who practices the yoga system with half-open eyes, ceasing all material activities, desires some satisfaction for his personal self. Such yogīs are desirous of material power, and that is their conception of the perfection of yoga. Actually, this is not the perfection of yoga, but a materialistic process.

If one practices the regulative principles of yoga, he can attain eight kinds of perfection. He can become lighter than a cotton swab. He can become heavier than a great stone. He can immediately get whatever he likes. Sometimes he can even create a planet. Although rare, such powerful yogīs actually exist. Viśvāmitra Yogi wanted to beget a man from a palm tree. He was thinking, "Why should a man have to live so many months within the womb of his mother? Why can't he be produced just like a fruit?" Thinking like this, Viśvāmitra Yogi produced men like coconuts. Sometimes yogīs are so powerful, they can perform such acts, but these are all material powers. Ultimately such yogīs are vanquished, because they cannot retain these material powers indefinitely. Bhakta-yogīs are not interested in such powers.

The bhakta-yogī, acting in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, works for the satisfaction of the whole without self-interest. A Kṛṣṇa conscious person does not desire self-satisfaction. Rather, his criterion of success is the satisfaction of Kṛṣṇa; therefore he is considered the perfect sannyāsi and the perfect yogī.

A pure devotee does not even want salvation. The salvationists want to be saved from rebirth, and the voidists also want to put an end to all material life. Caitanya Mahāprabhu, however, requested
only devotional service to Lord Kṛṣṇa, birth after birth; in other words, Caitanya Mahāprabhu was prepared to endure material miseries in one body after another. What, then, was Caitanya Mahāprabhu’s desire? He wanted to engage in God’s service, and nothing more, for that is the real perfection of yoga.

Whether in the spiritual sky or the material sky, the individual spirit soul is constitutionally the same. It is said that he is one ten-thousandth part of the tip of a hair. This means that our position is that of a small particle. But spirit can expand. Just as we develop a material body in the material world, we develop a spiritual body in the spiritual world. In the material world, expansion takes place in contact with matter. In the spiritual world, this expansion is spiritual.

Actually, the first lesson of Bhagavad-gītā is, “I am spirit soul. I am different from this body.” I am a living force, but this material body is not a living force. It is dull matter, and it is activated only because spiritual force is present. In the spiritual world, everything is living force; there is no dead matter. There, the body is totally spiritual. One may compare the spirit soul with oil and the body with water. When oil is in water, there is a distinction, and that distinction always remains. In the spiritual sky, there is no question of oil being placed in water. There everything is spirit.

The impersonalists do not want to develop a body. They simply want to remain spiritual particles, and that is their idea of happiness. But we bhakti-yogīs (Vaiṣṇavas) want to serve Kṛṣṇa, and therefore we require hands, legs, and all the other bodily parts. Indeed, we are given these bodies in order to serve Kṛṣṇa. Just as we develop a material body in our mother’s womb, we can similarly develop a spiritual body in the spiritual world.

The spiritual body is developed through the practice of Kṛṣṇa consciousness. This material body is spiritualized by this bhakti-yoga process. If you place an iron within fire, the iron becomes so hot that it also becomes fiery. When the iron is red hot, it acquires all the qualities of fire. If you touch something with that iron, that iron will act as fire. Similarly, although this body is material, it can become spiritualized through Kṛṣṇa consciousness and act as spirit. Although copper is just a metal, as soon as it comes in contact with electricity, it becomes electrified, and if you touch it, you will receive an electric shock.

As soon as your body is spiritualized, material activity ceases. Material activity means acting for sense gratification. As you become spiritualized, material demands dwindle until they become nil. How is this possible? In order for an iron to act as fire, it must remain constantly in contact with fire. In order for the material body to become spiritualized, one must remain constantly in Kṛṣṇa consciousness. When this material body is fully engaged in spiritual activities, it becomes spiritual.

According to the Vedic system, the body of a high personality, a sannyāsī, is not burned but buried, because a sannyāsī’s body is considered spiritual, having ceased to engage in material activities. If everyone in this world engages fully in Kṛṣṇa consciousness and ceases to work for sense gratification, this entire world will immediately become spiritual. Therefore it is necessary to learn how to work for the satisfaction of Kṛṣṇa. This requires a little time to understand. If something is used for Kṛṣṇa’s satisfaction, it is spiritual. Since we are using microphones, typewriters, etc., in order to talk and write about Kṛṣṇa, they become spiritualized. What is the difference between prasāda and ordinary food? Some people may say, “What is this prasāda? We are eating the same food. Why do you call it prasāda?” It is prasāda because it has been offered for Kṛṣṇa’s satisfaction and has thus become spiritualized.

In a higher sense, there is no matter at all. Everything is spiritual. Because Kṛṣṇa is spiritual and matter is one of the energies of Kṛṣṇa, matter is also spiritual. Kṛṣṇa is totally spiritual, and spirit comes from spirit. However, because the living entities are misusing this energy—that is, using it for something other than Kṛṣṇa’s purposes—it becomes materialized, and so we call it matter. The purpose of this Kṛṣṇa consciousness movement is to respirtualize this energy. It is our purpose to respirtualize the whole world, socially and politically. Of course, this may not be possible, but it is our ideal. At least if we individually take up this respirtualization process, our lives become perfect.

In Bhagavad-gītā (9.22) Kṛṣṇa says that He provides for His
devotees by giving them what they lack and preserving what they have. People are very fond of saying that God helps those who help themselves, but they do not understand that helping yourself means putting yourself under Kṛṣṇa's protection. If one thinks, "Oh, I can help myself. I can protect myself," one is thinking foolishly. As long as my finger is attached to my body, it is useful, and I may spend thousands of dollars to preserve it. But if this finger is cut off, it is useless and is thrown away. Similarly, we are part and parcel of Kṛṣṇa, and helping ourselves means putting ourselves in our proper position as His parts and parcels. Otherwise we are only fit to be cast away. The finger can help itself only when situated properly on the hand and working on behalf of the entire body. If the finger thinks, "I will separate myself from this body and simply help myself," that finger will be cast away and will die. As soon as we think, "I shall live independently of Kṛṣṇa," that is our spiritual death, and as soon as we engage in Kṛṣṇa's service, as His part and parcel, that is our spiritual life. Therefore, helping oneself means knowing one's actual position and working accordingly. It is not possible to help oneself without knowing one's position.

Service means activity, for when we serve someone, we are acting. When we serve Kṛṣṇa, we are preaching Kṛṣṇa consciousness, or cooking, or cleansing the temple, or distributing books about Kṛṣṇa, or writing about Him, or shopping for foodstuff to offer Him. There are so many ways to serve. Helping Kṛṣṇa means acting for Him, not sitting down in one place and artificially meditating. Kṛṣṇa consciousness means activity. Whatever assets we have should be utilized for Kṛṣṇa. That is the process of bhakti-yoga. Kṛṣṇa has given us a mind, and we must utilize this mind to think of Kṛṣṇa. We have been given these hands, and we must use them to wash the temple or cook for Kṛṣṇa. We have been given these legs, and we should use them to go to the temple of Kṛṣṇa. We have been given a nose, and we should use it to smell the flowers that have been offered to Kṛṣṇa. Through the process of bhakti-yoga, we engage all these senses in the service of Kṛṣṇa, and in this way the senses are spiritualized.

In Bhagavad-gītā, Arjuna was refusing to act, and Kṛṣṇa was interpreting him to engage in activity. The entire Bhagavad-gītā is an inspiration to work, to engage in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, to act on Kṛṣṇa's behalf. Kṛṣṇa never tells Arjuna, "My dear friend Arjuna, don't concern yourself with this war. Just sit down and meditate upon Me." This is not the message of Bhagavad-gītā. We are not to refrain from all activity, but only from those activities that impede our consciousness of Kṛṣṇa. Meditation means stopping all nonsensical activity. Those who are advanced in Kṛṣṇa consciousness are constantly working for Kṛṣṇa.

A mother tells only her bad child to sit down and do nothing. If a child can do nothing but disturb his mother, the mother says, "My dear child, just sit down here and keep quiet." But if the child can work nicely, the mother says, "My dear child, will you please help me do this? Will you go over there and do that?" Sitting still in one place is just for those who do not know how to work sensibly. As long as the child sits in one place, he does not raise havoc. Sitting still means negating nonsense; it is not positive activity. In negation, there is no life. Positive activities constitute life, and positive activity is the message of Bhagavad-gītā. Spiritual life is not "Don't do this." Spiritual life is "Do this!" In order to act properly, there are certain things that one must know not to do; therefore certain activities are forbidden. The whole Bhagavad-gītā, however, is "do." Kṛṣṇa says, "Fight for Me." At the beginning of Bhagavad-gītā, when Arjuna told Kṛṣṇa, "I will not fight," Śrī Kṛṣṇa said,

\[
\text{kutas tvā kaśmalam idam}
\]
\[
\text{viśame samapashhitam}
\]
\[
\text{anārya-juṣṭam asvargyāṁ}
\]
\[
\text{akīrī-karam arjuna}
\]

"My dear Arjuna, how have these impurities come upon you? They are not at all befitting a man who knows the progressive values of life. They lead not to higher planets, but to infamy." (Bg. 2.2) Kṛṣṇa directly tells Arjuna that he is speaking like a non-Aryan—that is, like one who does not know the spiritual values of life. So Kṛṣṇa consciousness does not mean sitting down idly.
Krṣṇa Himself does not sit down idly. All His pastimes are filled with activity. When we go to the spiritual world, we will see that Krṣṇa is always engaged in dancing, eating, and enjoying. He does not sit down to meditate. Is there any account of the gopīs meditating? Did Caitanya Mahāprabhu sit down to meditate? No, He was always dancing and chanting Hare Krṣṇa. The spirit soul is naturally active. How can we sit down silently and do nothing? It is not possible. Therefore, after Śrī Krṣṇa outlined the sāṅkhya-yoga system in the Sixth Chapter of Bhagavad-gītā, Śrīla Ṛṣṭītītītā quoted the following verse from the Bhagavad-gītā: *Yo 'yam yogas tvayā proktaḥ sāmyena madhusūdana etasyāham na paśyāmi cañcalatvāt sthitim sthirām*.

"O Madhusūdana [Krṣṇa], the system of yoga which You have summarized appears impractical and unendurable to me, for the mind is restless and unsteady." (Bṛg. 6.33) Although Arjuna was highly elevated and was Krṣṇa’s intimate friend, he immediately refused to take up this sāṅkhya-yoga system. In essence, he said, "It is not possible for me." How could it have been possible? Arjuna was a warrior, a householder, and he wanted a kingdom. What time did he have for meditation? He flatly refused to practice this type of meditational yoga, saying that the mind is as difficult to control as the wind (Bṛg. 6.34). That is a fact. It is not possible to control the mind artificially; therefore we must engage the mind in Krṣṇa consciousness. Then it is controlled. If Arjuna found this process more difficult than controlling the wind, then what of us? After all, Arjuna was not an ordinary man. He was personally talking with the Supreme Lord, Śrī Krṣṇa, and He proclaimed the mind to be like a great wind. How can we control the wind? We can control the mind only by fixing it on Krṣṇa’s lotus feet. That is the perfection of meditation.

No one really wants to sit down and meditate. Why should we? We’re meant for positive activity, for recreation, for pleasure. In Krṣṇa consciousness, our recreation is dancing and chanting, and

**Yoga as Action**

When we get tired, we take prasāda. Is dancing difficult? Is chanting difficult? We don’t charge anything to dance in the temple. If you go to a ballroom, you have to pay to enter, but we do not charge. It is natural to enjoy music and dancing and palatable foods. These are our recreations, and this is our method of meditation. So this yoga system is not at all laborious. It is simply recreation, susukham. It is stated in the Ninth Chapter of Bhagavad-gītā (9.2) that this yoga is susukham—very happy. "It is everlasting, and it is joyfully performed." It is natural, automatic, and spontaneous. It is our real life in the spiritual world.

In Vaikuṇṭha, the spiritual world, there is no anxiety. Vaikuṇṭha means "freedom from anxiety," and in Vaikuṇṭha the liberated souls are always dancing, chanting, and taking prasāda. There are no factories, hard work, or technical institutions. There is no need for these artificial things. In Vedānta-sūtra it is stated, ānandamaya ‘bhyaśāt: God is ānandamaya, full of bliss and pleasure. Since we are part and parcel of God, we also possess these same qualities. So the goal of our yoga process is to join with the supreme ānandamaya, Śrī Krṣṇa, to join His dance party. Then we will be actually happy.

On this earth we are trying to be happy artificially and are therefore frustrated. Once we are situated in Krṣṇa consciousness, we will revive our original position and become simply joyful. Since our actual nature is ānandamaya, blissful, we are always searching for happiness. In the cities we are inundated with advertisements. Restaurants, bars, nightclubs, and dance halls are always announcing, "Come on, here is ānanda. Here is pleasure." That is because everyone is searching for ānanda, pleasure. Our society for Krṣṇa consciousness is also announcing, "Here is ānanda," but our standard of pleasure is very different. In any case, the goal—pleasure—is the same.

Most people are hunting for pleasure on the gross material platform. The more advanced search for pleasure in speculation, philosophy, poetry, or art. The bhakti-yogi, however, searches for pleasure on the transcendental platform, and that is his only business. Why are people working so hard all day? They are thinking, "Tonight I shall enjoy. Tonight I will associate with this girl or
with my wife." Thus people are going to so much trouble to acquire a little pleasure. Pleasure is the ultimate goal, but unfortunately, under illusion, people do not know where real pleasure is to be found. Real pleasure exists eternally in the transcendental form of Kṛṣṇa.

Perhaps you have seen pictures of Kṛṣṇa, and if so, you have noticed that Kṛṣṇa is always jolly. If you join His society, you will also become jolly. Have you ever seen pictures of Kṛṣṇa working with a machine? Have you ever seen pictures of Kṛṣṇa smoking? No, He is by nature full of pleasure, and if you unfold yourself in that way, you will also find pleasure. Pleasure cannot be found artificially.

``
ananda-cinmaya-rasa-pratibhavitābhūs
tābhir ya eva nija-rūpatayā kalābhiḥ
goloka eva nivasatī akhilātma-bhūto
govindam ādi-puruṣam tam aham bhajāmi
``

"I worship Govinda, the primeval Lord, residing in His own realm, Goloka, with Rādhā, resembling His own spiritual figure, the embodiment of the ecstatic potency possessed of the sixty-four artistic activities, in the company of Her confidantes (sahkhīs), embodiments of the extensions of Her bodily form, permeated and vitalized by His ever-blissful spiritual rasa."

(Brahma-samhitā 5.37)

The word rasa means "taste," or "mellow." We enjoy sweets or candy because of their taste. Everyone is trying to enjoy some taste, and we want to enjoy sex because there is some taste there. That is called ādi taste. Material tastes are different because they are tasted and quickly finished. Material tastes last only a few minutes. You may take a piece of candy, taste it, and say, "Oh, that is very nice," but you have to taste another in order to continue the enjoyment. Material taste is not unlimited, but real taste is without end. Spiritual taste cannot be forgotten; it goes on increasing. Ānanda-cintāmaṇi. Caitanya Mahāprabhu says, "This taste is always increasing." Spiritual taste is like the ocean in the sense that it is very great. The Pacific Ocean is always toss-
“What is called renunciation is the same as yoga, or linking oneself with the Supreme, for no one can become a yogi unless he renounces the desire for sense gratification.” (Bg.6.2)

This is the real purpose of the practice of yoga. The word yoga means “to join.” Although we are naturally part and parcel of the Supreme, in our conditioned state we are now separated. Because of our separation, we are reluctant to understand God and to speak of our relationship with Him and are even inclined to think of such discussion as a waste of time. In a church or in a Kṛṣṇa consciousness temple, we speak of God, but people in general are not very interested. They think it is a waste of time, a kind of recreation in the name of spiritual advancement, and they believe that this time could be better used to earn money or enjoy themselves in a nightclub or restaurant.

Therefore, it is due to sense enjoyment that we are not attracted to God, and therefore it is said that those who are addicted to sense enjoyment cannot become yogīs—that is, they are not eligible to participate in the yoga system. One cannot advance in any
yoga system if he partakes in sense gratification and then sits down to try to meditate. This is just a colossal hoax. Such contradictory activity has no meaning. First of all, yoga means controlling the senses—yama-niyama. There are eight stages of yoga—yama, niyama, āsana, dhyāna, dhāranā, prānāyāma, pratyāhāra, and samādhi.

In this Sixth Chapter, in which the Lord speaks of the sāñkhya-yoga system, He states from the very beginning that one cannot become a yogi unless one renounces the desire for sense gratification. Therefore, if one indulges his senses, he cannot be accepted as a yogi. Yoga demands strict celibacy. In the yoga system, there is no sex life. If one indulges in sex, he cannot be a yogi. Many so-called yogis come from India to America and say, “Yes, you can do whatever you like. You can have as much sex as you like. Just meditate. I will give you some mantra, and you will give me some money.” This is all nonsense. According to the authoritative statements of Śrī Kṛṣṇa, one cannot become a yogi unless he renounces the desire for sense gratification. This is explicitly stated as the first condition for yoga practice.

āuruksor munera yogam
karma karaṇam ucyate
yogārūdhasya tasyaiva
śamaḥ karaṇam ucyate

“For one who is a neophyte in the eightfold yoga system, work is said to be the means; and for one who has already attained to yoga, cessation of all material activities is said to be the means.” (Bg. 6.3) According to this verse, there are those who are attempting to reach the perfectional stage and those who have already attained that stage. As long as one is not situated on the perfectional platform, he must engage in so many works. In the West, there are many yoga societies attempting to practice the āsana system, and therefore they practice sitting in different postures. That may help, but it is only a process by which one can attain the real platform. The real yoga system, in its perfectional stage, is far different from these bodily gymnastics.

Mastering the Mind and Senses

It is important to understand, however, that from the beginning, a Kṛṣṇa conscious person is situated on the platform of meditation because he is always thinking of Kṛṣṇa. Being constantly engaged in the service of Kṛṣṇa, he is considered to have ceased all material activities.

yadā hi nendriyārtheṣu
na karmasv anusajjate
sarva-saṅkalpa-sannyāsi
yogārūdhas tado’sate

“A person is said to have attained to yoga when, having renounced all material desires, he neither acts for sense gratification nor engages in fruitive activities.” (Bg. 6.4)

This is actually the perfectional stage of yoga, and one who has attained this stage is said to have attained to yoga. This is to say that he has connected, joined, or linked himself with the supreme whole. If a part is disconnected from a machine, it serves no function, but as soon as it is properly attached to the machine, it works properly and carries out its different functions. That is the meaning of yoga—joining with the supreme whole, serving in conjunction with the total machine. Presently we are disconnected, and our material fruitive activities are simply a waste of time. One who engages in such activity is described in Bhagavad-gītā as a mūḍha—that is, a rascal. Although one may earn thousands of dollars daily and be an important businessman, he is described in Bhagavad-gītā as a mūḍha, rascal, because he is just wasting his time in eating, sleeping, defending, and mating.

People do not stop to consider that they are actually working very hard for nothing. One who earns millions of dollars cannot really eat much more than a man who makes ten dollars. A man who earns millions of dollars cannot mate with millions of women. That is not within his power. His mating power is the same as one who earns ten dollars, just as his power of eating is the same. This is to say that our power of enjoyment is limited. One should therefore think, “My enjoyment is the same as that of the man who is earning ten dollars daily. So why am I working so hard to
earn millions of dollars? Why am I wasting my energy? I should engage my time and energy in understanding God. That is the purpose of life.” If one has no economic problems, he has sufficient time to understand Kṛṣṇa consciousness. If he wastes this precious time, he is called a mūḍha, a rascal or an ass.

According to the preceding verse, a person is said to have attained yoga when he has renounced all material desires. Once we are situated perfectly in yoga, we are satisfied. We no longer experience material desires. We no longer act for sense gratification or engage in fruitive activity. When we speak of “fruitive activity,” we refer to activities carried out for the purpose of sense gratification. That is, we are earning money in order to gratify our senses. If one is virtuous, he engages in pious activities—he donates money to charities, opens hospitals, schools, etc. Although these are certainly virtuous activities, they are ultimately meant for sense gratification. How is this? If I donate to an educational institution, for instance, I will receive good educational facilities and will become highly educated in my next life. Being thus educated, I will attain a good position and will acquire a good amount of money. Then how will I utilize this money? For sense gratification. Thus these virtuous and fruitive activities form a kind of cycle.

We often hear the expression “a better standard of life,” but what does this mean? It is said that the standard of life in America is superior to that in India, but in both countries there is eating, sleeping, defending, and mating. Of course, in America the quality of food may be better, but the eating process is there. A superior standard of life does not mean superior spiritual realization. It just means better eating, sleeping, mating, and defending. This is called fruitive activity, and it is based on sense gratification.

Yoga has nothing to do with sense gratification or fruitive activity. Yoga means connecting with the Supreme. Dhrūva Mahārāja underwent severe austerities in order to see God, and when he finally saw God, he said, svāmin kṛtārtho 'smi varāṁ na yāce: “My dear Lord, I am now fully satisfied. I am not asking for anything more. I do not want any further benediction from You.” Why didn’t Dhrūva Mahārāja ask for benedictions? What is a benediction? Generally, benediction means receiving a great kingdom, a beautiful wife, palatable food, and so forth, but when one is actually connected with God, he does not want such “benedictions.” He is fully satisfied.

Actually, Dhrūva Mahārāja initially searched for God in order to attain his father’s kingdom. Dhrūva Mahārāja’s mother was rejected by his father, and his stepmother resented his sitting on his father’s lap. Indeed, she forbade him to sit on his father’s lap because Dhrūva Mahārāja was not born in her womb. Although only five years old, Dhrūva Mahārāja was a kṣatriya, and he took this as a great insult. Going to his own mother, he said, “Mother, my stepmother has insulted me by forbidding me to sit on my father’s lap.” Dhrūva Mahārāja then started to cry, and his mother said, “My dear boy, what can I do? Your father loves your stepmother more than he loves me. I can do nothing.” Dhrūva Mahārāja then said, “But I want my father’s kingdom. Tell me how I can get it.” “My dear boy,” his mother said, “if Kṛṣṇa, God, blesses you, you can get it.” “Where is God?” Dhrūva Mahārāja asked. “Oh, it is said that God is in the forest,” his mother said. “Great sages go to the forest to search for God.”

Hearing this, Dhrūva Mahārāja went directly to the forest and began to perform severe penances. Finally he saw God, and when he saw Him, he no longer desired his father’s kingdom. Instead, he said, “My dear Lord, I was searching for some pebbles, but instead I have found valuable jewels. I no longer care for my father’s kingdom. Now I am fully satisfied.” When one is actually connected with God, he is totally satisfied. His satisfaction is infinitely greater than so-called enjoyment in this material world. That is the satisfaction resulting from God realization, and that is the perfection of yoga.

When a person is fully engaged in the transcendental loving service of the Lord, he is pleased in himself, and thus he is no longer engaged in sense gratification or in fruitive activities. Otherwise, one must be engaged in sense gratification, since one cannot live without engagement. It is impossible to cease all activity. As stated before, it is our nature as living entities to act. It is
said, “An idle mind is the devil’s workshop.” If we have no Kṛṣṇa conscious engagement, we will engage in sense gratification or fruitive activity. If a child is not trained or educated, he becomes spoiled. If one does not practice the yoga system, if he does not attempt to control his senses by the yoga process, he will engage his senses in their own gratification. When one is gratifying his senses, there is no question of practicing yoga.

Without Kṛṣṇa consciousness, one must be always seeking self-centered or extended selfish activities. But a Kṛṣṇa conscious person can do everything for the satisfaction of Kṛṣṇa and thereby be perfectly detached from sense gratification. One who has not realized Kṛṣṇa must mechanically try to escape material desires before being elevated to the top rung of the yoga ladder.

One may compare the yoga system to a stepladder. One yogī may be situated on the fifth step, another yogī may be on the fiftieth step and yet another on the five-hundredth step. The purpose, of course, is to reach the top. Although the entire ladder may be called the yoga system, one who is on the fifth step is not equal to one who is higher up. In Bhagavad-gītā, Śrī Kṛṣṇa delineates a number of yoga systems—karma-yoga, jñāna-yoga, dhyāna-yoga, and bhakti-yoga. All of these systems are connected with God, Kṛṣṇa, just as the entire ladder is connected to the topmost floor. This is not to say that everyone practicing the yoga system is situated on the topmost floor; only he who is in full Kṛṣṇa consciousness is so situated. Others are situated on different steps of the yogic ladder.

uddhared ātmanātmanānān
nātmanānān avasādayet
ātmaiva hy ātmano bandhur
ātmaiva ripur ātmanaḥ

“A man must elevate himself by his own mind, not degrade himself. The mind is the friend of the conditioned soul, and his enemy as well.” (Bg. 6.5) The word ātmā denotes body, mind, and soul—depending on different circumstances. In the yoga system, the mind and the conditioned soul are especially important. Since the mind is the central point of yoga practice, ātmā refers here to the mind. The purpose of the yoga system is to control the mind and to draw it away from attachment to sense objects. It is stressed herein that the mind must be so trained that it can deliver the conditioned soul from the mire of nescience.

In the aṣṭāṅga-yoga system, these eightfold yogas—dhyāna, dhāranā, etc.—are meant to control the mind. Śrī Kṛṣṇa explicitly states that a man must utilize his mind to elevate himself. Unless one can control the mind, there is no question of elevation. The body is like a chariot, and the mind is the driver. If you tell your driver, “Please take me to the Kṛṣṇa temple,” the driver will take you there; but if you tell him, “Please take me to that liquor house,” you will go there. It is the driver’s business to take you wherever you like. If you can control the driver, he will take you wherever you should go, but if not, he will ultimately take you wherever he likes. If you have no control over your driver, your driver is your enemy, but if he acts according to your orders, he is your friend.

The yoga system is meant to control the mind in such a way that the mind will act as your friend. Sometimes the mind acts as a friend and sometimes as an enemy. Because we are part and parcel of the Supreme, who has infinite independence, we have minute, or finite, independence. It is the mind that is controlling that independence, and therefore he may either take us to the Kṛṣṇa temple or to some nightclub.

It is the purpose of this Kṛṣṇa consciousness movement to fix the mind on Kṛṣṇa. When the mind is so fixed, he cannot do anything but act as our friend. He has no scope to act any other way. As soon as Kṛṣṇa is seated in the mind, there is light, just as when the sun is in the sky, darkness is vanquished. Kṛṣṇa is just like the sun, and when He is present, there is no scope for darkness. If we keep Kṛṣṇa on our mind, the darkness of māyā will never be able to enter. Keeping the mind fixed on Kṛṣṇa is the perfection of yoga. If the mind is strongly fixed on the Supreme, it will not allow any nonsense to enter, and there will be no downfall. If the mind is strong, the driver is strong, and we may go wherever we may desire. The entire yoga system is meant to make the mind strong,
to make it incapable of deviating from the Supreme.

Sa vai manah kṛṣṇa-padāravindayoh. One should fix his mind on Kṛṣṇa, just as Ambariṣa Mahārāja did when he had a fight with a great aśīrāma-yogi named Durvāsā Muni. Since Ambariṣa Mahārāja was a householder, he was a pounds-shillings man. This means that he had to take into account pounds, shillings, and sixpence, or dollars and cents. Apart from being a householder, Mahārāja Ambariṣa was also a great king and devotee. Durvāsā Muni was a great yogi who happened to be very envious of Mahārāja Ambariṣa. Durvāsā Muni was thinking, “I am a great yogi, and I can travel in space. This man is an ordinary king, and he does not possess such yogic powers. Still, people pay him more honor. Why is this? I will teach him a good lesson.” Durvāsā Muni then proceeded to pick a quarrel with Mahārāja Ambariṣa, but because the king was always thinking of Kṛṣṇa, he managed to defeat this great yogi. Durvāsā Muni was consequently directed by Nārāyaṇa to take shelter at the feet of Mahārāja Ambariṣa. Durvāsā Muni was such a perfect yogi that within a year he could travel throughout the material universe and also penetrate the spiritual universe. Indeed, he went directly to the abode of God, Vaikuṇṭha, and saw the Personality of Godhead Himself. Yet Durvāsā Muni was so weak that he had to return to earth and fall at the feet of Mahārāja Ambariṣa. Mahārāja Ambariṣa was an ordinary king, but his one great qualification was that he was always thinking of Kṛṣṇa. Thus his mind was always controlled, and he was situated at the highest perfectional level of yoga. We also can very easily control the mind by keeping it fixed on the lotus feet of Kṛṣṇa within. Simply by thinking of Kṛṣṇa, we become victorious conquerors, topmost yogīs.

Yoga indriya-sānyamah. The yoga system is meant to control the senses, and since the mind is above the senses, if we can control the mind, our senses are automatically controlled. The tongue may want to eat something improper, but if the mind is strong, it can say, “No. You cannot eat this. You can only eat kṛṣṇa-prasāda.” In this way the tongue, as well as all the other senses, can be controlled by the mind. Indriyāṇi parāṇy āhur indriyebhyah

Mastering the Mind and Senses
parāṁ manah. The material body consists of the senses, and consequently the body’s activities are sensual activities. However, above the senses is the mind, and above the mind is the intelligence, and above the intelligence is the spirit soul. If one is on the spiritual platform, his intelligence, mind, and senses are all spiritualized. The purpose of this Kṛṣṇa consciousness process is to actualize the spiritualization of senses, mind, and intelligence. The spirit soul is superior to all, but because he is sleeping, he has given power of attorney to the fickle mind. However, when the soul is awakened, he is once again master, and the servile mind cannot act improperly. Once we are awakened in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, the intelligence, mind, and senses cannot act nonsensically. They must act in accordance with the dictations of the spirit soul. That is spiritualization and purification. Hṛṣīkena hṛṣīkeśa-sevanaṁ bhaktir ucyate. We must serve the master of the senses with the senses. The Supreme Lord is called Hṛṣīkeśa, which means that He is the original controller of the senses, just as a king is the original controller of all the activities of a state, and the citizens are secondary controllers.

Bhakti means acting spiritually in accordance with the desires of Hṛṣīkeśa. How can we act? Since we must act with our senses, we must spiritualize our senses in order to act properly. As stated before, sitting in silent meditation means stopping undesirable activity, but acting in Kṛṣṇa consciousness is transcendental. The cessation of nonsensical action is not in itself perfection. We must act perfectly. Unless we train our senses to act in accordance with Hṛṣīkeśa, the master of the senses, our senses will again engage in undesirable activities, and we will fall down. Therefore we must engage the senses in action for Kṛṣṇa and in this way remain firmly fixed in Kṛṣṇa consciousness.

In material existence one is subjected to the influence of the mind and the senses. In fact, the pure soul is entangled in the material world because of the mind’s ego, which desires to lord it over material nature. Therefore the mind should be trained so that it will not be attracted by the glitter of material nature, and in this way the conditioned soul may be saved. One should not degrade
oneself by attraction to sense objects. The more one is attracted by sense objects, the more one becomes entangled in material existence. The best way to disentangle oneself is to always engage the mind in Kṛṣṇa consciousness. The word hi in verse 5, Chapter Six (Bhagavad-gītā), is used to emphasize this point—namely, that one must do this. It is also said,

\[ \text{mana eva manuṣyānām} \\
\text{kāraṇām bandha-mokṣayoḥ} \\
\text{bandhāya viṣayāsaṅgi} \\
\text{muktyai nirviṣayayaṁ manaḥ} \]

“For man, mind is the cause of bondage and mind is the cause of liberation. Mind absorbed in sense objects is the cause of bondage, and mind detached from the sense objects is the cause of liberation.” (Viṣṇu Purāṇa 6.7.28) The mind which is always engaged in Kṛṣṇa consciousness is the cause of supreme liberation. When the mind is thus engaged in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, there is no chance of its being engaged in māyā consciousness. In Kṛṣṇa consciousness, we remain in the sunlight, and there is no chance of our being obscured by darkness.

Because we have freedom, or liberty, we can stay within a dark room or go out into the broad daylight. That is our choice. Darkness can be eradicated by light, but light cannot be covered by darkness. If we are in a dark room and someone brings in a lamp, the darkness is vanquished. But we cannot take darkness into the sunlight. It is not possible. The darkness will simply fade away. Kṛṣṇa sūrya-saṁ ca māyā haya andhakāra. Kṛṣṇa is like sunlight, and māyā is like darkness. So how can darkness exist in sunlight? If we always keep ourselves in the sunlight, darkness will fail to act upon us. This is the whole philosophy of Kṛṣṇa consciousness: always engage in Kṛṣṇa conscious activities, and māyā will be dissipated, just as darkness is dissipated when there is light. This is stated in Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam (1.7.4):

\[ \text{bhafti-yogena manasi} \\
\text{samyak praṇīhitī 'male} \]

“Due to the external energy, the living entity, although transcendental to the three modes of material nature, thinks of himself as a material product and thus undergoes the reactions of material miseries.” Thus the illusory energy has temporarily covered the conditioned souls. And who are these conditioned souls? Although finite, the conditioned spirit souls are as full of light as Kṛṣṇa. The problem is that the conditioned soul identifies himself with this material world. This is called illusion, false indentification with matter. Although the individual spirit soul is transcendental, he engages in improper activities under the dictation of
THE PATH OF PERFECTION

māyā, and this brings about his conditioning or false identification. This is very elaborately explained in the Seventh Chapter, First Canto, of Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam.

In conclusion, our actual position is that of spiritual sparks, full of light. Now we are temporarily covered by this illusory energy, māyā, which is dictating to us. Acting under the influence of māyā, we are becoming more and more entangled in the material energy. The yoga system is meant to disentangle us, and the perfection of yoga is Kṛṣṇa consciousness. Thus Kṛṣṇa consciousness is the most effective means by which we can disentangle ourselves from the influence of the material energy.

CHAPTER THREE

Learning How to See God

bandhur ātmātmanas tasya
eyaṁtaiyātmanā jītaḥ
anātmanas tu śāruvte
vartetātmāvā śāruvate

"For him who has conquered the mind, the mind is the best of friends; but for one who has failed to do so, his very mind will be the greatest enemy." (Bg. 6.6)

The purpose of the yoga system is to make the mind into a friend instead of an enemy. In material contact, the mind is in a kind of drunken condition. As stated in Caitanya-caritāmṛta (Madhya-līlā 20.117),

kṛṣṇa bhuli' sei jīva—anādi-bahirāmukha
atta eva māyā tāre deya samsāra-duḥkha

"Forgetting Kṛṣṇa, the living entity has been attracted by the Lord's external feature from time immemorial. Therefore the illusory energy (māyā) gives him all kinds of misery in his material existence." The living entity is constitutionally spirit soul, part and parcel of the Supreme Lord. As soon as the mind is contaminated, the living entity, because he has a little independence, rebels. In this state, the mind dictates, "Why should I serve Kṛṣṇa? I am God." Thus one labors under a false impression, and his life is spoiled. We try to conquer many things—even empires—but if we fail to conquer the mind, we are failures even if we manage to conquer an empire. Even though emperors, we will have within us our greatest enemy—our own mind.
"For one who has conquered the mind, the Supersoul is already reached, for he has attained tranquillity. To such a man happiness and distress, heat and cold, honor and dishonor are all the same." (Bg. 6.7)

Actually, every living entity is intended to abide by the dictation of the Supreme Personality of Godhead, who is seated in everyone’s heart as Paramātmā. When the mind is misled by the external illusory energy, one becomes entangled in material activities. Therefore, as soon as one’s mind is controlled through one of the yoga systems, one is to be considered as having already reached the destination. One has to abide by superior dictation. When the mind is fixed on the superior nature, he has no alternative but to follow the dictation of the Supreme. The mind must admit some superior dictation and follow it. When the mind is controlled, one automatically follows the dictation of the Paramātmā, or Supersoul. Because this transcendental position is at once achieved by one who is in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, the devotee of the Lord is unaffected by the dualities of material existence—distress and happiness, cold and heat, etc. This state is called samādhi, or absorption in the Supreme.

"A person is said to be established in self-realization and is called a yogī [or mystic] when he is fully satisfied by virtue of acquired knowledge and realization. Such a person is situated in transcendence and is self-controlled. He sees everything—whether it be pebbles, stones, or gold—as the same." (Bg. 6.8)

Book knowledge without realization of the Supreme Truth is useless. This is stated as follows:

\[
\text{ataḥ śrī-krṣṇa-nāmādi}
\naḥ bhaved grāhyam indriyaiḥ
\text{sevonmukhe hi jīhvādau}
\svayam eva sphuraty adaḥ
\]

"No one can understand the transcendental nature of the name, form, quality, and pastimes of Śrī Kṛṣṇa through his materially contaminated senses. Only when one becomes spiritually saturated by transcendental service to the Lord are the transcendental name, form, quality, and pastimes of the Lord revealed to him." (Padma Purāṇa)

There are men in the modes of goodness, passion, and ignorance, and to reclaim all these conditioned souls, there are eighteen Purāṇas. Six Purāṇas are meant for those in the mode of goodness, six for those in the mode of passion, and six for those in the mode of ignorance. The Padma Purāṇa is written for those in the mode of goodness. Because there are many different types of men, there are many different Vedic rituals. In the Vedic literatures there are descriptions of rituals and ceremonies in which a goat may be sacrificed in the presence of the goddess Kāli. This is described in the Mārkandeya Purāṇa, but this Purāṇa is meant for the instruction of those in the mode of ignorance.

It is very difficult for one to give up his attachments all at once. If one is addicted to meat-eating and is suddenly told that he must not eat meat, he cannot do so. If one is attached to drinking liquor and is suddenly told that liquor is no good, he cannot accept this advice. Therefore, in the Purāṇas we find certain instructions that say in essence, "All right, if you want to eat meat, just worship the goddess Kāli and sacrifice a goat for her. Only then can you eat meat. You cannot eat meat just by purchasing it from the butcher shop. No, there must be sacrifice or restriction.” In order to sacrifice a goat to the goddess Kāli, one must make arrangements for a certain date and utilize certain paraphernalia. That type of
pūjā, or worship, is allowed on the night of the dark moon, which means once a month. There are also certain mantras to be chanted when the goat is sacrificed. The goat is told, “Your life is being sacrificed before the goddess Kāli; you will therefore be immediately promoted to the human form.” Generally, in order to attain the human form, a living entity has to pass through many species of life on the evolutionary scale, but if a goat is sacrificed to the goddess Kāli, he is immediately promoted to the human form. The mantra also says, “You have the right to kill this man who is sacrificing you.” The word māṁsa indicates that in his next birth, the goat will eat the flesh of the man who is presently sacrificing him. This in itself should bring the goat-eater to his senses. He should consider, “Why am I eating this flesh? Why am I doing this? I’ll have to repay with my own flesh in another life.” The whole idea is to discourage one from eating meat.

Thus, because there are different types of men, there are eighteen Purāṇas to guide them. The Vedic literatures are meant to redeem all men, not just a few. It is not that those who are meat-eaters or drunkards are rejected. A doctor accepts all patients, and he prescribes different medicines according to the disease. It is not that he gives the same medicine for all diseases or that he treats just one disease. No, he offers a specific type of medicine to whomever comes, and the patient receives gradual treatment. However, the sattvic Purāṇas like the Padma Purāṇa are meant for those in the mode of goodness, for those who immediately are capable of worshipping the Supreme Personality of Godhead.

In Brahma-samhitā it is stated, īśvaraḥ paramah kṛṣṇah sac-cid-ānanda-vigrahaḥ: “The supreme controller is Kṛṣṇa, who has an eternal, blissful, spiritual body.” This is the Vedic pronunciation, and we thus accept Śrī Kṛṣṇa as the Supreme Lord. Those who are in the modes of passion and ignorance attempt to imagine the form of God, and when they are confused, they say, “Oh, there is no personal God. God is impersonal, or void.” This is just the result of frustration. Actually, God has His form. And why not? According to the Vedānta-sūtra, janmādy asya yatāh: “The Supreme Absolute Truth is He from whom everything emanates.” It is easy to see that we have different types of bodies, different forms. We must consider where these forms are coming from. Where have these forms originated? We have to use a little common sense. If God is not a person, how can His sons be persons? If your father is just a void, if he is not a person, how can you be a person? If your father has no form, how can you have form? This is not very difficult; it is just a commonsense question. Unfortunately, because people are frustrated, they try to imagine some form, or they conclude that because this material form is temporary and troublesome, God must be formless. Indeed, because all forms in this material world must perish, God, of necessity, must be formless.

Brahma-samhitā specifically states that this conception is a mistake. Īśvaraḥ paramah kṛṣṇah sac-cid-ānanda-vigrahaḥ. God has form, but His form is sac-cid-ānanda-vigraha. Sat means “eternal,” cit means “knowledge,” and ānanda means “pleasure.” God has form, but His form is eternal and is full of knowledge and pleasure. We cannot compare His form to our form. Our form is neither eternal, full of pleasure, nor full of knowledge; therefore God’s form is different.

As soon as we speak of form, we think that form must be like ours, and we therefore conclude that the eternal, all-knowing, and all-blissful God must be without form. This is not knowledge but the result of imperfect speculation. According to Padma Purāṇa, atah śrī-kṛṣṇa-nāmādi na bhaved grāhyam indriyaiḥ: “One cannot understand the form, name, quality, or paraphernalia of God with one’s material senses.” Since our senses are imperfect, we cannot speculate on Him who is supremely perfect. That is not possible.

Then how is it possible to understand Him? Sevonmukhe hi jītvādau. By training and purifying our senses, we may come to understand and see God. Presently we are attempting to understand God with impure, imperfect senses. It is like someone with cataracts trying to see. Just because one has cataracts, he should not conclude that there is nothing to be seen. Similarly, we cannot presently conceive of God’s form, but once our cataracts are removed, we can see. According to Brahma-samhitā, premāṇijana-cchurita-bhakti-vilocanena santah sadaiva hṛdayeṣu vilokayanti: “The devotees whose eyes are anointed with the ointment of love
of God can see God within their hearts twenty-four hours a day.” Purification of the senses is what is required; then we can understand the name, form, qualities, and pastimes of God. Then we’ll be able to see God everywhere and in everything.

These matters are discussed thoroughly in the Vedic literatures. For instance, it is said that although God has no hands or legs, He can accept whatever we offer (apāni-pādo javano grhītā). It is also stated that although God has neither eyes nor ears, He can see and hear everything. These are apparent contradictions, but they are meant to teach us an important lesson. When we speak of seeing, we think of material vision. Due to our material conception, we think that the eyes of God must be like ours. Therefore, in order to remove these material conceptions, the Vedic literatures say that God has no hands, legs, eyes, ears, etc. God has eyes, but His vision is infinite. He can see in darkness, and He can see everywhere at once; therefore He has different eyes. Similarly, God has ears and can hear. He may be in His kingdom, millions and millions of miles away, but He can hear us whispering, because He is sitting within. We cannot avoid God’s seeing, hearing, or touching.

patraṁ puṣpaṁ phalaṁ toyam
yo me bhaktyā prayacchati
tad aham bhakty-vaisthīram
āśnāmiprayatātmanah

“If one offers Me with love and devotion a leaf, a flower, fruit, or water, I will accept it.” (Bg. 9.26) If God does not have senses, how can He accept and eat the offerings that are presented to Him? According to ritual, we are offering Kṛṣṇa food daily, and we can see that the taste of this food is immediately changed. This is a practical example. God eats, but because He is full, He does not eat like us. If I offer you a plate of food, you will eat it, and it will be finished. God is not hungry, but He eats, and at the same time, He leaves the food as it is, and thus it is transformed into prasāda, His mercy. Pūrṇasya pūrnam ādāya pūrnam evāvaśiṣyate. God is full, yet He accepts all the food that we offer. Still, the food remains as it is. He can eat with His eyes. As stated in Brahma-

Learning How to See God

sarvhitā, āṅgāṇi yasya sakalendriya-vrttimanti: “Every sense of the Lord’s body has all the potencies of the other senses.” Although we can see with our eyes, we cannot eat with our eyes. The senses of God, however, being infinite, are different. Simply by looking at the food that is offered to Him, He eats it.

This may not be understood at the present moment; therefore the Padma Purāṇa states that when one becomes spiritually saturated by rendering transcendental service to the Lord, the transcendental name, form, qualities, and pastimes of the Lord are revealed. We cannot understand God by our own endeavor, but out of mercy God reveals Himself to us. If it is night, and you want to see the sun, you will have to wait for the sun to appear in the morning. You cannot go outside with a big torch and say, “Come on, I will show you the sunlight.” In the morning, when the sun rises of its own will, we can see it. Because our senses are imperfect, we cannot see God by our own endeavor. We have to purify our senses and wait for the time when God will be pleased to reveal Himself to us. That is the process. We cannot challenge God. We cannot say, “O my dear God, my dear Kṛṣṇa. Please come. I want to see You.” No, God is not our order supplier. He is not our servant. When He is pleased, we will see Him; therefore this Kṛṣṇa consciousness is a process by which we can please God so that He will reveal Himself to us.

Because people cannot see God, they readily accept anyone who says, “I am God.” Because people have no conception of God, they are eager to accept any rascal who comes along and proclaims himself to be God. People are fond of saying, “I am searching after the truth,” but in order to search for the truth, we must know what the truth is. Otherwise, how can we search it out? If we want to purchase gold, we must at least theoretically know what gold is, otherwise we will be cheated. Consequently, having no conception of the truth or of God, people are being cheated by so many rascals who say, “I am God.” In a society of rascals, one rascal accepts another rascal as God, and this is all the result of rascaldom. But all this has nothing to do with God. One has to qualify himself to see and understand God, and that process of qualification is called Kṛṣṇa consciousness. Sevonmukhe hi jihvādau svayam eva sphuraty adah: by engaging ourselves in God’s
service, we become qualified to see God. Otherwise it is not possible. We may be great scientists or scholars, but our mundane scholarship will not help us see God.

This *Bhagavad-gītā* is the science of Kṛṣṇa consciousness, and in order to understand Kṛṣṇa, we must be fortunate enough to associate with a person who is in pure Kṛṣṇa consciousness. We cannot understand *Bhagavad-gītā* simply by acquiring an M.A., Ph.D., or whatever. *Bhagavad-gītā* is a transcendental science, and it requires different senses in order to be understood. Our senses must be purified by the rendering of service, not by the acquiring of academic degrees. There are many Ph.D.’s, many scholars, who cannot understand Kṛṣṇa. Therefore Kṛṣṇa appears in the material world. Although He is unborn (*ajo pi sann avyayātmā*), He comes to reveal Himself to us.

Thus Kṛṣṇa is realized by the grace of Kṛṣṇa or by the grace of a Kṛṣṇa conscious person who has realized Kṛṣṇa by the grace of Kṛṣṇa. We cannot understand Him through academic knowledge. We can only understand Kṛṣṇa by acquiring the grace of Kṛṣṇa. Once we acquire His grace, we can see Him, talk with Him—do whatever we desire. It is not that Kṛṣṇa is a void. He is a person, the Supreme Person, and we can have a relationship with Him. That is the Vedic injunction. *Nityo nityānāṁ cetanās cetanānāṁ*: “We are all eternal persons, and God is the supreme eternal person.” We are all eternal, and God is the supreme eternal. Presently, because we are encaged within these bodies, we are experiencing birth and death, but actually we are beyond birth and death. We are eternal spirit souls, but according to our work and desires, we are transmigrating from one body to another. It is explained in the Second Chapter of *Bhagavad-gītā* (2.20),

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{na jāyate mriyate vā kadācit} \\
\text{nāyam bhūtvā bhavitā vā na bhūyāḥ} \\
\text{ajo nityāḥ sāsvato 'yaṁ purāṇo} \\
\text{na hanyate hanyamāne śarīre}
\end{align*}
\]

“For the soul there is never birth nor death. Nor, having once been, does he ever cease to be. He is unborn, eternal, ever-

Existing, undying, and primeval. He is not slain when the body is slain.”

Just as God is eternal, we are also eternal, and when we establish our eternal relationship with the supreme, complete eternal, we realize our eternality. *Nityo nityānāṁ cetanās cetanānāṁ*. God is the supreme living entity among all living entities, the supreme eternal among all eternals. By Kṛṣṇa consciousness, by purification of the senses, this knowledge will be realized, and we will come to see God.

A Kṛṣṇa conscious person has realized knowledge, by the grace of Kṛṣṇa, because he is satisfied with pure devotional service. By realized knowledge, one becomes perfect. By transcendental knowledge one can remain steady in his convictions, but by mere academic knowledge one can be easily deluded and confused by apparent contradictions. It is the realized soul who is actually self-controlled, because he is surrendered to Kṛṣṇa. He is transcendental because he has nothing to do with mundane scholarship. For him, mundane scholarship and mental speculation, which may be as good as gold to others, are of no greater value than pebbles or stones.

Even if one is illiterate, he can realize God simply by engaging himself in submissive, transcendental loving service. God is not subjected to any material condition. He is supreme spirit, and the process of realizing Him is also beyond material considerations. Therefore, one may be a very learned scholar and still not be able to understand God. One should not think that because he is very poor he cannot realize God; nor should one think that he can realize God just because he is very rich. God may be understood by an uneducated person and misunderstood by one with great education. The understanding of God, like God Himself, is unconditional (apratihata).

In Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam (1.2.6) it is stated,

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{sa vai puṁsāṁ paro dharmo} \\
\text{yato bhaktir adhokṣaje} \\
\text{ahaituky apratihata} \\
\text{yayātmā suprasādāti}
\end{align*}
\]
"The supreme occupation (dharma) for all humanity is that by which men can attain to loving devotional service unto the transcendental Lord. Such devotional service must be unmotivated and uninterrupted to completely satisfy the self." Cultivation of love of God: that is the definition of first-class religion. Just as there are three gunas, or three qualities, in the material world, there are various religions, each situated in one of the three modes. We are not, however, concerned with analyzing these religious conceptions. For us, the purpose of religion is to understand God and to learn how to love God. That is the real purpose of any first-class religious system. If a religion does not teach love of God, it is useless. One may follow his religious principles very carefully, but if one does not possess love of God, his religion is null and void. According to Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam (1.2.6) real religion must be ahaïtuki and apratihatī: without selfish motivation and without impediment. By practicing such a religion, we will become happy in all respects.

Sa vai punam para dharma yato bhaktir adhokṣaje. Another name for God is adhokṣaja, which means "one who cannot be seen by materialistic attempts." That is to say that God conquers all our attempts to see Him materially. The word aksa ya refers to experimental knowledge, and adhah means "unreachable." So God cannot be reached through experimental knowledge. We have to learn to contact Him in a different way: through submissive hearing and the rendering of transcendental loving service.

True religion teaches causeless love of God. It does not say, "I love God because He supplies me nice objects for my sense gratification." That is not love. God is great, God is our eternal father, and it is our duty to love Him. There is no question of barter or exchange. We should not think, "Oh, God gives me my daily bread; therefore I love God." God gives daily bread even to the cats and dogs. Since He is the father of everyone, He is supplying everyone food. So loving God for daily bread is not love. Love is without reason. Even if God does not supply us our daily bread, we should love Him. That is true love. As Caitanya Mahāprabhu said, āśīṣya va pāda-ratām pinaśtu mām adarśanāṁ marma-hatāṁ karotu vā: "I know no one but Kṛṣṇa as my Lord, and He shall remain so even if He handles me roughly by His embrace or makes me broken-hearted by not being present before me. He is completely free to do anything and everything, for He is always my worshipful Lord, unconditionally." That is the sentiment of one who is established in pure love of God. When we attain that stage of love of God, we will find that everything is full of pleasure; God is full of pleasure, and we also are full of pleasure.

suhrn-mitāry-udāsina-madhyāstha-dvēsa-bandhuṣu
sādhuṣv api ca pāpeṣu
sama-buddhir viśyate

"A person is said to be still further advanced when he regards all—the honest well-wisher, friends and enemies, the envious, the pious, the sinner, and those who are indifferent and impartial—with an equal mind." (Bg. 6.9) This is a sign of real spiritual advancement. In this material world we are considering people friends and enemies on the bodily platform—that is, on the basis of sense gratification. If one gratifies our senses, he is our friend, and if he doesn't, he is our enemy. However, once we have realized God, or the Absolute Truth, there are no such material considerations.

In this material world, all conditioned souls are under illusion. A doctor treats all patients, and although a patient may be delirious and insult the doctor, the doctor does not refuse to treat him. He still administers the medicine that is required. As Lord Jesus Christ said, we should hate the sin, not the sinner. That is a very nice statement, because the sinner is under illusion. He is mad. If we hate him, how can we deliver him? Therefore, those who are advanced devotees, who are really servants of God, do not hate anyone. When Lord Jesus Christ was being crucified, he said, "My God, forgive them. They know not what they do." This is the proper attitude of an advanced devotee. He understands that the conditioned souls cannot be hated, because they have become mad due to their materialistic way of thinking. In this Kṛṣṇa...
consciousness movement, there is no question of hating anyone. Everyone is welcomed to come and chant Hare Kṛṣṇa, take kṛṣṇa-prasāda, listen to the philosophy of Bhagavad-gītā, and try to rectify material, conditioned life. This is the essential program of Kṛṣṇa consciousness. Therefore, Lord Caitanya Mahāprabhu said,

*yāre dēkha, tāre kaha 'kṛṣṇa'-upadeśa āmāra ājñāya guru haṁ tāra ei deśa*

"Instruct everyone to follow the orders of Lord Śrī Kṛṣṇa as they are given in Bhagavad-gītā and Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam. In this way become a spiritual master and try to liberate everyone in this land." (Cc. Madhya 7.128)

**yogi yuṣṭita satatam**  
ātmānaṁ rahasi sthitah  
ekāki yata-cittātmā  
nirāsir aparigrahaṁ

"A transcendentalist should always try to concentrate his mind on the Supreme Self; he should live alone in a secluded place and should always carefully control his mind. He should be free from desires and feelings of possessiveness." (Bg. 6.10)

In this chapter, in which the Lord is teaching the principles of the yoga system, He here points out that a transcendentalist should always try to concentrate his mind on the Supreme Self. "The Supreme Self" refers to Kṛṣṇa, the Supreme Lord. As explained before (niṣyo niyānāṁ cetanaṁ cetanānāṁ), God is the supreme eternal, the supreme living entity, the Supreme Self. The purpose of the entire yoga system is to concentrate the mind on this Supreme Self. We are not the Supreme Self. That should be understood. The Supreme Self is God. This is dvaita-vāda—duality. Duality means that God is different from me. He is supreme, and I am subordinate. He is great, and I am small. He is infinite, and I am infinitesimal. This is the relationship between ourselves and God as we should understand it. Because we are infinitesimal, we should concentrate our mind on the infinite Supreme Self. In order to do this, we should live alone, and "living alone" means that we should not live with those who are not Kṛṣṇa conscious. Ideally, this means that one should live in a secluded place, like a forest or a jungle, but in this age such a secluded place is very difficult to find. Therefore "secluded place" refers to that place where God consciousness is taught.

The transcendentalist should also carefully control his mind, and this means fixing the mind on the Supreme Self, or Kṛṣṇa. As explained before, Kṛṣṇa is just like the sun, and if the mind is fixed on Him, there is no question of darkness. If Kṛṣṇa is always on our minds, māyā, or illusion, can never enter. This is the process of concentration.

The transcendentalist should also be free from desires and feelings of possessiveness. People are materially diseased because they desire things and want to possess them. We desire that which we do not have, and we lament for that which we have lost. Brahma-bhūtabhṛtā prasannātmā. One who is actually God conscious does not desire material possessions. He has only one desire—to serve Kṛṣṇa. It is not possible to give up desire, but it is possible to purify our desires. It is the nature of the living entity to have some desire, but in the conditioned state, one's desire is contaminated. Conditioned, one thinks, "I desire to satisfy my senses by material possession." Purified desire is desire for Kṛṣṇa, and if we desire Kṛṣṇa, desires for material possessions will automatically vanish.

**śucau dese pratiṣṭhāpya**  
sthiram āsanam ātmanah  
nāty-ucchriṁ nāti-niĉaṁ  
cailājina-kuśottaram

tatraikāgraṁ manah kṛtvā  
yata-cittendriya-kriyāḥ  
upaviśyāsane yuṣṭiyād  
yogam ātma-visuddhayaye

"To practice yoga, one should go to a secluded place and should lay kuṣa grass on the ground and then cover it with a deerskin and a soft cloth. The seat should neither be too high nor too low and
should be situated in a sacred place. The yogi should then sit on it very firmly and should practice yoga by controlling the mind and the senses, purifying the heart, and fixing the mind on one point.” (Bg. 6.11-12) In these verses it is emphasized how and where one should sit. In the United States and other Western countries, there are many so-called yoga societies, but they do not practice yoga according to these prescriptions. “A sacred place” refers to a place of pilgrimage. In India, the yogis, the transcendentalists, or devotees, all leave home and reside in sacred places such as Prayaga, Mathurā, Vṛndāvana, Hṛṣīkeśa, and Hardwar and in solitude practice yoga where the sacred rivers like the Yamunā and the Ganges flow. So how is this possible in this age? How many people are prepared to find such a sacred place? In order to earn one’s livelihood, one has to live in a congested city. There is no question of finding a sacred place, but for the practice of yoga, that is the first prerequisite.

Therefore in this bhakti-yoga system, the temple is considered the sacred place. The temple is nirguna—transcendental. According to the Vedas, a city is in the mode of passion, and a forest is in the mode of goodness. The temple, however, is transcendental. If you live in a city or town, you live in a place where passion is predominant, and if you want to escape this, you may go to a forest, a place of goodness. God’s temple, however, is above passion and goodness; therefore the temple of Kṛṣṇa is the only secluded place for this age. In this age, it is not possible to retreat to a forest; nor is it useful to make a show of practicing yoga in so-called yoga societies and at the same time engage in nonsense.

Therefore, in the Brha-nārādiya Purāṇa it is said that in Kali-yuga, when people are generally short-lived slow in spiritual realization, and always disturbed by various anxieties, the best means of spiritual realization is chanting the holy names of the Lord.

*hare nāma hare nāma
hare nāmaiva kevalam
kalau nāsty eva nāsty eva
nāsty eva gatir anyathā

“In this age of quarrel and hypocrisy, the only means of deliverance is chanting the holy name of the Lord. There is no other way. There is no other way. There is no other way.”

This is the solution, the grand gift of Caitanya Mahāprabhu. In this age, other yoga practices are not feasible, but this practice is so simple and universal that even a child can take to it.
CHAPTER FOUR

Moderation in Yoga

In this Sixth Chapter of Bhagavad-gītā, the system of sāṅkhya-yoga, which is the meditational astāṅga-yoga system, is emphasized. Jñāna-yoga emphasizes the philosophical process of analysis by which we determine what is Brahman and what is not Brahman. This process is known as the neti neti process, or “not this, not that.” In the beginning of the Vedaṅga-sūtra it is stated, janmādy asya yataḥ: “The Supreme Brahman, the Absolute Truth, is He from whom everything emanates.” This is a hint, and from this we must try to understand the nature of the Supreme Brahman, from whom everything is emanating. The nature of that Absolute Truth is explained in detail in Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam.

In the first verse of Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam it is stated,

ōṁ namo bhagavate vāsudevāya

janmādy asya yato 'nvayād itaratoś cārtheṣv abhijńaḥ svarāt
tene brahma hrdaḥ ya ādi-kavaye muhyanti yat surayaḥ
teto-vāri-mṛdāṁ yathā vinimayo yatra tri-sargo 'mṛśā
dhāmnā svena sadā nirasta-kuhakam satyaṁ param dhīmahi

“O my Lord, Śrī Kṛṣṇa, son of Vasudeva, O all-pervading Personality of Godhead, I offer my respectful obeisances unto You. I meditate upon Lord Śrī Kṛṣṇa because He is the Absolute Truth and the primeval cause of all causes of the creation, sustenance, and destruction of the manifested universes. He is directly and indirectly conscious of all manifestations, and He is independent because there is no other cause beyond Him. It is He only who first imparted the Vedic knowledge unto the heart of Brahmājī, the
original living being. By Him even the great sages and demigods are placed into illusion, as one is bewildered by the illusory representations of water seen in fire, or land seen on water. Only because of Him do the material universes, temporarily manifested by the reactions of the three modes of nature, appear factual, although they are unreal. I therefore meditate upon Him, Lord Śrī Kṛṣṇa, who is eternally existent in the transcendental abode which is forever free from the illusory representations of the material world. I meditate upon Him, for He is the Absolute Truth.

Thus from the very beginning of Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam the Absolute Truth is proclaimed to be cognizant. He is not dead or void. And what is the nature of His cognizance? Anvayād itaratās cārthesu: "He is directly and indirectly cognizant of all manifestations." To a limited degree, each and every living entity is cognizant, but we are not completely cognizant. I may claim, "This is my head," but if someone asks me, "Do you know how many hairs are on your head?" I will not be able to reply. Of course, this kind of knowledge is not transcendental, but in Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam it is stated that the Supreme Absolute Truth knows everything, directly and indirectly. I may know that I am eating, but I do not know the intricacies of the eating process—how my body is exactly assimilating food, how the blood is passing through my veins, etc. I am cognizant that my body is functioning, but I do not know how these processes are working perfectly and all at once. This is because my knowledge is limited.

By definition, God is He who knows everything. He knows what is going on in every corner of His creation; therefore, from the very beginning, Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam explains that the Supreme Truth from whom everything is emanating is supremely cognizant (abhijñāḥ). One may ask, "If the Absolute Truth is so powerful, wise, and cognizant, He must have attained this knowledge from some similar being." This is not the case. If He attains His knowledge from someone else, He is not God. Śvārāt. He is independent, and His knowledge is automatically there.

Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam is the supreme combination of both the jñāna- and bhakti-yoga systems, because it analyzes in detail the nature of that Supreme Being from whom everything is emanating. By the jñāna-yoga system, one attempts to understand the nature of the Absolute Truth in a philosophical way. In the bhakti-yoga system, the target is the same. The methodology, however, is somewhat different. Whereas the jñāna attempts to concentrate his mind philosophically on the Supreme, the bhakta simply engages himself in the service of the Supreme Lord, and the Lord reveals Himself. The jñāna method is called the ascending process, and the bhakti method is called the descending process. If we are in the darkness of night, we may attempt to attain the sunlight by ascending in a powerful rocket. According to the descending process, however, we simply wait the sunrise, and then we understand immediately.

Through the ascending process, we attempt to reach the Supreme through our own endeavor, through the process of induction. By induction, we may attempt to find out whether man is mortal by studying thousands of men, trying to see whether they are mortal or immortal. This, of course, will take a great deal of time. If, however, I accept from superior authority the fact that all men are mortal, my knowledge is complete and immediate. Thus it is stated in Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam (10.14.29), "My dear Lord, a person who has received a little favor from You can understand You very quickly. But those who are trying to understand You by the ascending process may go on speculating for millions of years and still never understand You."

By mental speculation, one is more likely to simply reach a point of frustration and confusion and conclude, "Oh, God is zero." But if God is zero, how are so many figures emanating from Him? As the Vedānta says (janmādy asya yataḥ), "Everything is generating from the Supreme." Therefore the Supreme cannot be zero. We have to study how so many forms, so many infinite living entities, are being generated from the Supreme. This is also explained in the Vedānta-sūtra, which is the study of ultimate knowledge. The word veda means "knowledge," and anta means "ultimate." Ultimate knowledge is knowledge of the Supreme Lord.

So how is it possible to understand the form of Kṛṣṇa? If it is stated that God does not have eyes, limbs, and senses like ours,
how are we to understand His transcendental senses, His transcendental form? This is not possible by mental speculation. We simply have to serve Him, and then He will reveal Himself to us. As Kṛṣṇa Himself states in the Tenth Chapter of Bhagavad-gītā (10.11),

teṣām evānukampārtham
aham ajñāna-jāṁ tamaḥ
nāśāyāmy ātma-bhāva-stho
jñāna-dīpena bhāsvatā
t

"Out of compassion for them, I, dwelling in their hearts, destroy with the shining lamp of knowledge the darkness born of ignorance." Kṛṣṇa is within us, and when we are sincerely searching for Him by the devotional process, He will reveal Himself.

Again, as stated in the Eighteenth Chapter of Bhagavad-gītā (18.55),

bhaktyā māṁ abhijānāti
yāvān yaś cāsmi tattvataḥ
tato māṁ tattvato jñātvā
viśate tad-anantaram

"One can understand the Supreme Personality as He is only by devotional service. And when one is in full consciousness of the Supreme Lord by such devotion, he can enter into the kingdom of God." Thus God has to be understood by this process of bhakti-yoga, which is the process of śravaṇam kīrtanam viṣṇoh—hearing and chanting about Viṣṇu. This is the beginning of the bhakti-yoga process. If we but hear sincerely and submissively, we will understand. Kṛṣṇa will reveal Himself. Śravaṇam kīrtanam viṣṇoh smaranam poḍa-sevanam arcanam vandanaṁ dāsyam. There are nine different processes in the bhakti-yoga system. By vandanaṁ, we offer prayers, and that is also bhakti. Śravaṇam is hearing about Kṛṣṇa from Bhagavad-gītā, Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam, and other sāstras. Kīrtanam is chanting about His glories, chanting the Hare Kṛṣṇa mantra. This is the beginning of the bhakti-yoga process. Śravaṇam kīrtanam viṣṇoh. Everything is Viṣṇu, and meditation is on Viṣṇu. It is not possible to have bhakti without Viṣṇu. Kṛṣṇa is the original form of Viṣṇu (kṛṣṇas tu bhagavān svaṁ: "Kṛṣṇa is the original form of the Supreme Personality of Godhead"). If we but follow this bhakti-yoga process, we should be able to understand the Supreme, and all doubts should be removed.

The aṣṭānga-yoga process is outlined very specifically in the Sixth Chapter of Bhagavad-gītā (6.13–14):

samaṁ kāya-sīro-grīvaṁ
dhārayann acaṁ sthirāḥ
sampreksya nāsikāgraṁ svāṁ
dīsā śāṅkāvalokayan
praśāntātmā vigata-bhir
brahmācāri-vrata sthitāḥ
manah saṁyāmya mac-citto
yuktā dīśita mat-paraḥ

"One should hold one’s body, neck, and head erect in a straight line and stare steadily at the tip of the nose. Thus, with an unagitated, subdued mind, devoid of fear, completely free from sex life, one should meditate upon Me within the heart and make Me the ultimate goal of life." Yoga does not mean going to some class, paying some money, engaging in gymnastics, and then returning home to drink, smoke, and engage in sex. Such yoga is practiced by societies of the cheaters and the cheated. The authoritative yoga system is here outlined by the supreme authority, Śrī Kṛṣṇa Himself. Is there a better yogī than Kṛṣṇa, the Supreme Personality of Godhead? First of all, one has to go alone to a holy place and sit in a straight line, holding one’s body, neck, and head erect, and stare steadily at the tip of the nose. Why is this? This is a method to help concentrate one’s mind. That’s all. The real purpose of yoga, however, is to keep oneself always aware that Lord Kṛṣṇa is within.

One of the dangers of sitting in meditation and staring at the tip of one’s nose is that one will fall asleep. I have seen many
so-called meditators sitting like this and snoring. As soon as one closes his eyes, it is natural to feel sleepy; therefore it is recom-
mended that the eyes are half closed. Thus it is said that one should look at the tip of his nose. With one’s sight thus concentrated, the mind should be subdued and unagitated. In India, the yogi often goes to a jungle to practice such meditation in solitude. But in a jungle, the yogi may think, “Maybe some tiger or snake is coming. What is that noise?” In this way, his mind may be agit-
tated; therefore it is especially stated that the yogi must be “devoid of fear.” A deerskin is especially recommended as a yoga-āsana, because it contains a chemical property that repels snakes; thus the yogi will not be disturbed by serpents. Whatever the case—serpents, tigers, or lions—one can be truly fearless only when he is established in Kṛṣṇa consciousness. Due to perverted memory, the conditioned soul is naturally fearful. Fear is due to forgetting one’s eternal relationship with Kṛṣṇa. According to Śrimad-Bhāgavatam (11.2.37): bhayārīn dvitiyādhiṇvinēṣaṭaḥ syād iśād apeṣaṭa vyāpīṣyā yo 'smṛthi. Kṛṣṇa consciousness provides the only true basis for fearlessness; therefore perfect practice of yoga is not possible for one who is not Kṛṣṇa conscious.

The yogi must also be “completely free from sex life.” If one indulges in sex, he cannot concentrate; therefore brahmacārya, complete celibacy, is recommended to make the mind steady. By practicing celibacy, one cultivates determination. One modern example of such determination is that of Mahatma Gandhi, who was determined to resist the powerful British empire by means of non-
violation. At this time, India was dependent on the British, and the people had no weapons. The Britishers, being more powerful, easily cut down whatever violent revolutions the people at-
tempted. Therefore Gandhi resorted to nonviolence, noncoopera-
tion. “I shall not fight with the Britishers,” he declared, “and even if they react with violence, I shall remain nonviolent. In this way the world will sympathize with us.” Such a policy required a great amount of determination, and Gandhi’s determination was very strong because he was a brahmacārya. Although he had children and a wife, he renounced sex at the age of thirty-six. It was this sexual renunciation that enabled him to be so determined that he was able to lead his country and drive the British from India.

Thus, refraining from sex enables one to be very determined and powerful. It is not necessary to do anything else. This is a secret people are not aware of. If you want to do something with determination, you have to refrain from sex. Regardless of the process—be it hatha-yoga, bhakti-yoga, jñāna-yoga, or whatever—sex indulgence is not allowed. Sex is allowed only for house-
holders who want to beget good children and raise them in Kṛṣṇa consciousness. Sex is not meant for sense enjoyment, although enjoyment is there by nature. Unless there is some enjoyment, why should one assume the responsibility of begetting children? That is the secret of nature’s gift, but we should not take advantage of it. These are the secrets of life. By taking advantage and indulging in sex life, we are simply wasting our time. If one tells you that you can indulge in sex as much as you like and at the same time become a yogi, he is cheating you. If some so-called guru tells you to give him money in exchange for some mantra and that you can go on and engage in all kinds of nonsense, he is just cheating you. Because we want something sublime and yet want it cheaply, we put ourselves in a position to be cheated. This means that we actually want to be cheated. If we want something valuable, we must pay for it. We cannot expect to walk into a jewelry store and demand the most valuable jewel for a mere ten cents. No, we must pay a great deal. Similarly, if we want perfection in yoga, we have to pay by abstaining from sex. Perfection in yoga is not something childish, and Bhagavad-gītā instructs us that if we try to make yoga into something childish, we will be cheated. There are many cheaters awaiting us, waiting to take our money, giving us nothing, and then leaving. But according to Śrī Kṛṣṇa’s authoritative state-
ment in Bhagavad-gītā, one must be “completely free from sex life.” Being free from sex, one should “meditate upon Me within

THE PATH OF PERFECTION

Moderation in Yoga
This is the sānkhya-yoga system, as first practiced by Lord Kapiladeva, an incarnation of God. By sitting straight, staring steadily at the tip of one's nose, subduing one's mind, and abstaining from sex, one may be able to concentrate the mind on the viṣṇu-mūrti situated within the heart. When we refer to the Viṣṇu form, or viṣṇu-mūrti, we refer to Śrī Kṛṣṇa.

In this Kṛṣṇa consciousness movement we are meditating directly on Śrī Kṛṣṇa. This is a process of practical meditation. The members of this movement are concentrating their minds on Kṛṣṇa, regardless of their particular occupation. One may be working in the garden and digging in the earth, but he is thinking, “I am cultivating beautiful roses to offer to Kṛṣṇa.” One may be cooking in the kitchen, but he is always thinking, “I am preparing palatable food to be offered to Kṛṣṇa.” Similarly, chanting and dancing in the temple are forms of meditating on Kṛṣṇa. Thus the boys and girls in this Society for Kṛṣṇa consciousness are perfect yogis because they are meditating on Kṛṣṇa twenty-four hours a day. We are teaching the perfect yoga system, not according to our personal whims but according to the authority of Bhagavad-gītā. Nothing is concocted or manufactured. The verses of Bhagavad-gītā are there for all to see. The activities of the bhakti-yogīs in this movement are so molded that the practitioners cannot help but think of Kṛṣṇa at all times. “Meditate upon Me within the heart, and make Me the ultimate goal of life,” Śrī Kṛṣṇa says. This is the perfect yoga system, and one who practices it prepares himself to be transferred to Kṛṣṇaloka.

yuddhann evam sadātmānāṁ
yogī niyata-mānasāḥ
śāntīṁ nirvāṇa-paramāṁ
mat-saṁsthāṁ adhigaccatī
tat sādhū mane 'sura-varya dehināṁ sadā samudvigna- 
dhyāyāṁ asad-grahāt: “My dear father, O greatest of the demons, materialistic people are always full of anxiety because they have accepted as real that which is nonpermanent.” The word asad-grahāt is important because it indicates that materialists are always hankering to capture or possess something that is nonpermanent. History affords us many examples. Mr. Kennedy was a very rich man who wanted to become President, and he spent a great deal of money to attain that elevated position. Yet although he had a nice wife, children, and the presidency, everything was finished within a second. In the material world, people are always trying to capture something that is nonpermanent. Unfortunately, people do not come to their senses and realize, “I am permanent. I am spirit soul. Why am I hankering after something that is nonpermanent?”

We are always busy acquiring comforts for this body without considering that today, tomorrow, or in a hundred years this body will be finished. As far as the real “I” is concerned, “I am spirit soul. I have no birth. I have no death. What, then, is my proper function?” When we act on the material platform, we are engaged in bodily functions; therefore Prahlāda Mahārāja says that people are anxious because all their activities are targeted to capturing and possessing something nonpermanent. All living entities—men, beasts, birds, or whatever—are always full of anxiety, and this is the material disease. If we are always full of anxiety, how can we attain peace? People may live in a very nice house, but out front they place signs saying, “Beware of Dog,” or “No Trespassers.” This means that although they are living comfortably, they are anxious that someone will come and molest them.

Sitting in an office and earning a very good salary, a man is always thinking, “Oh, I hope I don’t lose this position.” The American nation is very rich, but because of this, it has to maintain a great
defense force. So who is free from anxiety? The conclusion is that if we want peace without anxiety, we have to come to Kṛṣṇa consciousness. There is no alternative.

In order to attain peace, we must meditate on Kṛṣṇa, and by meditating on Kṛṣṇa, we can control the body. The first part of the body to control is the tongue, and the next part is the genital. When these are controlled; everything is controlled. The tongue is controlled by chanting and eating kṛṣṇa-prasāda. As soon as the tongue is controlled, the stomach is controlled, and next the genitals are controlled. Actually, controlling the body and mind is a very simple process. When the mind is fixed on Kṛṣṇa and has no other engagement, it is automatically controlled. Activities should always be centered on working for Kṛṣṇa—gardening, typing, cooking, cleaning, whatever. By engaging the body, mind, and activities in the service of Kṛṣṇa, one attains the supreme nirvāṇa, which abides in Kṛṣṇa. Everything is in Kṛṣṇa; therefore we cannot find peace outside Kṛṣṇa conscious activities.

The ultimate goal of yoga is thus clearly explained. Yoga is not meant for attaining any kind of material facility; it is to enable the cessation of all material existence. As long as we require some material facilities, we will get them. But these facilities will not solve the problems of life. I have traveled throughout the world, and it is my opinion that American boys and girls have the best material facilities, but does this mean that they have attained peace? Can anyone say, “Yes, I am completely peaceful”? If this is so, why are American youngsters so frustrated and confused?

As long as we practice yoga in order to attain some material facility, there will be no question of peace. Yoga should only be practiced in order to understand Kṛṣṇa. Yoga is meant for the re-establishment of our lost relationship with Kṛṣṇa. Generally, one joins a yoga society in order to improve his health, to reduce fat. People in rich nations eat more, become fat, and then pay exorbitant prices to so-called yoga instructors in order to reduce. People try to reduce by all these artificial gymnastics; they do not understand that if they just eat vegetables or fruits and grains, they will never get fat. People get fat because they eat voraciously, because they eat meat. People who eat voraciously suffer from diabetes, overweight, heart attacks, etc., and those who eat insufficiently suffer from tuberculosis. Therefore moderation is required, and moderation in eating means that we eat only what is needed to keep body and soul together. If we eat more than we need or less, we will become diseased. All this is explained in the following verses:

nāty-aśnatas tu yo yo sī
na caikāntam anśnataḥ
na cātī-svapna-śilasya
jāgrato naiva cājuna

“There is no possibility of one’s becoming a yogi, O Arjuna, if one eats too much, or eats too little, sleeps too much, or does not sleep enough.” (Bg. 6.16)

yuktāhara-vihārasya
yukta-çeṣṭasya karmasu
yukta-svapnāvabodhasya
yogo bhavati duḥkhā-hā

“He who is temperate in his habits of eating, sleeping, working, and recreation can mitigate all material pains by practicing the yoga system.” (Bg. 6.17) It is not that we are to starve ourselves. The body must be kept fit for any practice; therefore eating is required, and according to our program, we eat only kṛṣṇa-prasāda. If you can comfortably eat ten pounds of food a day, then eat it, but if you try to eat ten pounds out of greed or avarice, you will suffer.

So in the practice of Kṛṣṇa consciousness, all these activities are present, but they are spiritualized. The cessation of material existence does not mean entering into “the void,” which is only a myth. There is no void anywhere within the creation of the Lord. I am not void but spirit soul. If I were void, how would my bodily development take place? Where is this “void”? If we sow a seed in the ground, it grows into a plant or large tree. The father injects a seed into the womb of the mother, the body grows like a tree.
Where is there void? In the Fourteenth Chapter of *Bhagavad-gītā* (14.4), Śrī Kṛṣṇa states,

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{sarva-yoni\text{-}u kaunteya} \\
\text{mūrtayah sambhavanti yāḥ} \\
\text{tāsāṁ brahma mahad yonir} \\
\text{aham bija\text{-}pradaḥ pita}
\end{align*}
\]

“It should be understood that all species of life, O son of Kuntī, are made possible by birth in this material nature, and that I am the seed\-giving father.” The seed is originally given by Kṛṣṇa, placed in the womb of material nature, and thus many living entities are generated. How can one argue against this process? If the seed of existence is void, how has this body developed?

Nirvāṇa actually means not accepting another material body. It’s not that we attempt to make this body void. Nirvāṇa means making the miserable, material, conditional body void—that is, converting the material body into a spiritual body. This means entering into the kingdom of God, which is described in the Fifteenth Chapter of *Bhagavad-gītā* (15.6):

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{na tad bhāsayate sūryo} \\
\text{sa śaśāṅko na pāvakaḥ} \\
\text{yad gatvā na nivartante} \\
\text{tad dhāma paramaṁ mama}
\end{align*}
\]

“That abode of Mine is not illumined by the sun or moon, nor by electricity. One who reaches it never returns to this material world.”

So there is no void anywhere within the Lord’s creation. All the planets in the spiritual sky are self-illumined, like the sun. The kingdom of God is everywhere, but the spiritual sky and the planets thereof are all param dhāma, or superior abodes. As stated, sunlight, moonlight, or electricity are not required in the *param dhāma*. We cannot find such an abode within this universe. We may travel as far as possible within our spaceships, but we will not find any place where there is no sunlight. The sunlight is so extensive that it pervades the universe. Therefore, that abode in which there is no sunlight, moonlight, or electricity is beyond this material sky. Beyond this material nature is a spiritual nature. Actually, we know nothing of this material nature; we do not even know how it was originally formed. So how can we know anything about the spiritual nature beyond? We have to learn from Kṛṣṇa, who lives there; otherwise we remain in ignorance.

In this *Bhagavad-gītā*, information of the spiritual sky is given. How can we know anything about that which we cannot reach? Our senses are so imperfect, how can we attain knowledge? We just have to hear and accept. How will we ever know who our father is unless we accept the word of our mother? Our mother says, “Here is your father,” and we have to accept this. We cannot determine our father by making inquiries here and there or by attempting to experiment. This knowledge is beyond our means. Similarly, if we want to learn about the spiritual sky, God’s kingdom, we have to hear from the authority, mother Vedas. The Vedas are called *veda\-mātā*, or mother Vedas, because the knowledge imparted therein is like that knowledge received from the mother. We *have* to believe in order to acquire knowledge. There is no possibility of acquiring this transcendental knowledge by experimenting with our imperfect senses.

A consummate yogi, who is perfect in understanding Lord Kṛṣṇa, as is clearly stated herein (śaṁtiṁ nirvāṇa\-paramāṁ māt\-samstham adhigacchatā) by the Lord Himself, can attain real peace and ultimately reach the supreme abode of the Lord. This abode is known as Kṛṣṇaloka, or Goloka Vṛndāvana. In the *Brahma\-sūtra* it is clearly stated *goloka eva nivasaty akhiliitma-bhūtah*) that the Lord, although residing always in His abode called Goloka, is the all-pervading Brahman and the localized Paramātma as well, by dint of His superior spiritual energies. No one can reach the spiritual sky or enter into the eternal abode of the Lord (Vaikuṇṭha, Goloka Vṛndāvana) without properly understanding Kṛṣṇa and His plenary expansion Viṣṇu. And according to *Brahma\-sūtra*, it is necessary to learn from our authorized mother, *veda\-mātā*. *Brahma\-sūtra* states that the Supreme Lord is living not only in His abode, Goloka Vṛndāvana,
When the hand is severed from the body, it is valueless, but when it is joined to the body, it is invaluable. Similarly, in this material world, just as the hand is part and parcel of the body. All these conceptions are there because we have to execute the yoga system with this material body. In other words, we have to make the best use of a bad bargain. The material body is a bad bargain in the sense that it is the source of all miseries. The spirit soul does not experience misery, and the normal condition of the living entity is a healthy, spiritual life. Misery and disease occur due to material contamination, disease, infection. So in a sense, material existence is a diseased condition of the soul. And what is that disease? The answer is not a great mystery. The disease is this body. This body is actually not meant for me. It may be “my” body, but it is a symptom of my diseased condition. In any case, I should identify with this body no more than I should identify with my clothes. In this world, we are all differently dressed. We are dressed as red men, brown men, white men, black men, yellow men, etc., or as Indians, Americans, Hindus, Muslims, Christians, etc. All these designations are not symptomatic of our actual position but of our diseased condition. The yoga system is meant to cure this disease by connecting us again with the Supreme.

We are meant to be connected with the Supreme just as our hand is meant to be connected to our body. We are part and parcel of the Supreme, just as the hand is part and parcel of the body. When the hand is severed from the body, it is valueless, but when it is joined to the body, it is invaluable. Similarly, in this material condition, we are disconnected from God. Actually, the word disconnected is not precise, because the connection is always there. God is always supplying all our necessities. Since nothing can exist without Kṛṣṇa, we cannot be disconnected from Him. Rather, it is better to say that we have forgotten that we are connected to Kṛṣṇa. Because of this forgetfulness, we have entered the criminal department of the universe. The government still takes care of its criminals, but they are legally disconnected from the civilian state. Our disconnection is a result of our engaging in so many nonsensical activities instead of utilizing our senses in the performance of our Kṛṣṇa conscious duties.

In conclusion, the person who works in Kṛṣṇa consciousness is the perfect yogi, because his mind is always absorbed in Kṛṣṇa’s activities. Sa vai manah kṛṣṇa-padārvindayoh. In the Vedas we also learn, tām eva viditvāi mṛtyum eti: “One can overcome the path of birth and death only by understanding the Supreme Personality of Godhead, Kṛṣṇa.” Thus perfection of yoga is the attainment of freedom from material existence and not some magical jugglery or gymnastic feat to befoul innocent people.

In this system of yoga, moderation is required; therefore it is stated that we should not eat too much or too little, sleep too much or too little, or work too much or too little. All these activities are there because we have to execute the yoga system with this material body. In other words, we have to make the best use of a bad bargain. The material body is a bad bargain in the sense that it is the source of all miseries. The spirit soul does not experience misery, and the normal condition of the living entity is his healthy, spiritual life. Misery and disease occur due to material contamination, disease, infection. So in a sense, material existence is a diseased condition of the soul. And what is that disease? The answer is not a great mystery. The disease is this body. This body is actually not meant for me. It may be “my” body, but it is a symptom of my diseased condition. In any case, I should identify with this body no more than I should identify with my clothes. In this world, we are all differently dressed. We are dressed as red men, brown men, white men, black men, yellow men, etc., or as Indians, Americans, Hindus, Muslims, Christians, etc. All these designations are not symptomatic of our actual position but of our diseased condition. The yoga system is meant to cure this disease by connecting us again with the Supreme.

Instead of thinking, “I am the eternal servant of God, or Kṛṣṇa,” we are thinking, “I am the servant of my society, my country, my husband, my wife, my dog, or whatever.” This is called forgetfulness. How has this come about? All these misconceptions have arisen due to this body. Because I was born in America, I am thinking that I am an American. Each society teaches its citizens to think in this way. Because I am thinking that I am an American, the American government can tell me, “Come and fight. Give your life for your country.” This is all due to the bodily conception; therefore an intelligent person should know that he is suffering miseries due to his body and that he should not act in such a way that he will continue to be imprisoned within a material body birth after birth. According to Padma Purāṇa, there are 8,400,000 species of life, and all are but different forms of contamination—whether one has an American body, an Indian body, a dog’s body, a hog’s body, or whatever. Therefore the first instruction in yoga is, “I am not this body.”

Attaining liberation from the contamination of the material body is the first teaching of Bhagavat-gītā. In the Second Chapter, after Arjuna told Śrī Kṛṣṇa, “I shall not fight,” the Lord said, “While speaking learned words, you are mourning for what is not worthy of grief. Those who are wise lament neither for the living nor the dead.” (Bg. 2.11) In other words, Arjuna was thinking on the bodily platform. He wanted to leave the battlefield because he did not want to fight with his relatives. All his conceptions were within the bodily atmosphere; therefore after Arjuna accepted Śrī
Krṣṇa as his spiritual master, the Lord immediately chastised him, just as a master chastises his disciple in order to teach him. Essentially, Śrī Krṣṇa told Arjuna, “You are talking very wisely, as if you know so many things, but actually you are speaking nonsense, because you are speaking from the bodily position.” Similarly, people throughout the world are posing themselves as highly advanced in education, science, philosophy, politics, etc., but their position is on the bodily platform.

A vulture may rise very high in the sky—seven or eight miles—and it is wonderful to see him fly in this way. He also has powerful eyes, for he can spot a carcass from a great distance. Yet what is the object of all these great qualifications? A dead body, a rotting carcass. His perfection is just to discover a dead piece of meat and eat it. That’s all. Similarly, we may have a very high education, but what is our objective? Sense enjoyment, the enjoyment of this material body. We may rise very high with our spaceships, but what is the purpose? Sense gratification, that’s all. This means that all the striving and all this high education are merely on the animal platform.

Therefore we should first of all know that our miserable material condition is due to this body. At the same time, we should know that this body is not permanent. Although I identify with my body, family, society, country, and so many other things, how long will these objects exist? They are not permanent. Asat is a word meaning that they will cease to exist. Asann api kleśāda āśa dehah: “The body is simply troublesome and impermanent.”

Many people come to us saying, “Śvamī, my position is so troublesome,” but as soon as we suggest the medicine, they will not accept it. This means that people want to manufacture their own medicine. Why do we go to a physician if we want to treat ourselves? People want to accept only what they think is palatable.

Although we are suggesting that this body is useless and is a form of contamination, we are not recommending that it be abused. We may use a car to carry us to work, but this does not mean that we should not take care of the car. We should take care of the car for it to carry us to and fro, but we should not become so attached to it that we are polishing it every day. We must utilize this material body in order to execute Krṣṇa consciousness, and to this end we should keep it fit and healthy, but we should not become too attached to it. That is called yukta-vairāgya. The body should not be neglected. We should bathe regularly, eat regularly, sleep regularly in order to keep mind and body healthy. Some people say that the body should be renounced and that we should take some drugs and abandon ourselves to intoxication, but this is not a yoga process. Krṣṇa has given us nice food—fruits, grains, vegetables, and milk—and we can prepare hundreds and thousands of nice preparations and offer them to the Lord. Our process is to eat krṣṇa-prasāda and to satisfy the tongue in that way. But we should not be greedy and eat dozens of samosas, sweetballs, and rasagullās. No. We should eat and sleep just enough to keep the body fit, and no more. It is stated,

yuktāhāra-vihārasya
yukta-ceṣṭasya karmasu
yukta-svapnāvabodhasya
yogo bhavati duḥkha-hā

“He who is temperate in his habits of eating, sleeping, working, and recreation can mitigate all material pains by practicing the yoga system.” (Bg. 6.17)

Although we should minimize our eating and sleeping, we should not attempt this too rapidly, at the risk of becoming sick. Because people are accustomed to eating voraciously, there are prescriptions for fasting. We can reduce our sleeping and eating, but we should remain in good health for spiritual purposes. We should not attempt to reduce eating and sleeping too rapidly or artificially; when we advance we will naturally not feel pain due to the reduction of these natural bodily processes. In this respect, Raghunātha dāsa Gosvāmi offers a good example. Although a very rich man’s son, Raghunātha dāsa left his home to join Lord Caitanya Mahāprabhu. Because he was the only son, Raghunātha dāsa was very beloved by his father. Understanding that his son had gone to Jagannātha Puri to join Lord Caitanya, the father sent four servants with money to attend him. At first, Raghunātha accepted the money, thinking, “Oh, since my father has sent all this money, I will accept it and invite all the sannyāsīs to feast.”
After some time, however, the feasts came to an end. Lord Caitanya Mahāprabhu then inquired from His secretary, Śvarūpa Dāmodara, “Nowadays I don’t receive any invitations from Raghunātha. What has happened?”

“That is because Raghunātha has stopped accepting his father’s money.”

“Oh, that’s very nice,” Caitanya Mahāprabhu said.

“Raghunātha was thinking, ‘Although I have renounced everything, I am still enjoying my father’s money. This is hypocritical.’ Therefore he has told the servants to go home and has refused the money.”

“So how is he living?” Caitanya Mahāprabhu inquired.

“Oh, he’s standing on the steps of the Jagannātha temple, and when the priests pass him on their way home, they offer him some prasāda. In this way, he is satisfied.”

“This is very nice,” Caitanya Mahāprabhu commented.

Regularly going to the Jagannātha temple, Lord Caitanya Mahāprabhu would see Raghunātha standing on the steps. After a few days, however, He no longer saw him there. Therefore the Lord commented to His secretary, “I no longer see Raghunātha standing on the temple steps.”

“He has given that up,” Śvarūpa Dāmodara explained. “He was thinking, ‘Oh, I am standing here just like a prostitute, waiting for someone to come and give me food. No. I don’t like this at all.’”

“That is very nice,” Caitanya Mahāprabhu said, “but how is he eating?”

“Every day he is collecting some rejected rice from the kitchen and is eating that.”

To encourage Raghunātha, Caitanya Mahāprabhu one day visited him. “Raghunātha,” the Lord said, “I hear that you are eating very palatable food. Why are you not inviting Me?”

Raghunātha did not reply, but the Lord quickly found the place where he kept the rice, and the Lord immediately took some and began to eat it.

“Dear Lord,” Raghunātha implored, “please do not eat this. It is not fit for You.”

“Oh, no? Why do you say it’s not fit for Me? It’s Lord Jagannātha’s prasāda!”

Lord Caitanya Mahāprabhu enacted this pastime just to discourage Raghunātha from thinking, “I am eating this miserable, rejected rice.” Through the Lord’s encouragement, Raghunātha dāsa Gosvāmī reduced his daily quantity of food until he was finally eating only one pat of butter every other day. And every day he was also bowing down hundreds of times and constantly chanting the holy names. Saṅkhya-pūrva-ānā-gāna-naśībhī kālāvasānī-krītav.

Although this is an excellent example of minimizing all material necessities, we should not try to imitate it. It is not possible for an ordinary man to imitate Raghunātha dāsa Gosvāmī, who was one of the six Gosvāmīs, a highly elevated associate of Lord Caitanya Mahāprabhu Himself. Each one of the six Gosvāmīs displayed a unique example of how one can advance in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, but it is not our duty to imitate them. We should just try to follow, as far as possible, in their footsteps. If we immediately try to become like Raghunātha dāsa Gosvāmī by imitating him, we are sure to fail, and whatever progress we have made will be defeated. Therefore the Lord says (Bg. 6.16) that there is no possibility of one’s becoming a yogī if one eats too much or too little.

The same moderation applies to sleep. Presently I may be sleeping ten hours a day, but if I can keep myself fit by sleeping five hours, why sleep ten? As far as the body is concerned, there are four demands—eating, sleeping, mating, and defending. The problem with modern civilization is that it is trying to increase these demands, but they should be decreased instead. Eat what we need, and sleep when we need, and our health will be excellent. There is no question of artificial imitation.

And what is the result obtained by one who is temperate in his habits?

\[
yādā viniyātaṁ cīttaṁ \\
āṁy evāvataṁśāte \\
nisprhaṁ sarva-kāmbībhya \\
yuṭa ity ucyate tadā
\]
"When the yogī, by practice of yoga, disciplines his mental activities and becomes situated in Transcendence—devoid of all material desires—he is said to have attained yoga." (Bg. 6.18)

The perfection of yoga means keeping the mind in a state of equilibrium. Materially speaking, this is impossible. After reading a mundane novel once, you will not want to read it again, but you can read Bhagavad-gītā four times a day and still not tire of it. You may chant someone’s name a half an hour, or sing a mundane song three or four times, but before long this becomes tiresome. Hare Kṛṣṇa, however, can be chanted day and night, and one will never tire of it. Therefore it is only through transcendental vibration that the mind can be kept in a state of equilibrium. When one’s mental activities are thus stabilized, one is said to have attained yoga.

The perfectional stage of yoga was exhibited by King Ambariṣa, who utilized all his senses in the service of the Lord. As stated in Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam (9.4.18–20),

\[
\text{sa vai manah kṛṣṇa-padāravindayor}
\text{vācāṁsi vaikuntha-guñānuvārane}
\text{karau harer mandira-mārjanādiṣu}
\text{śrutih cakārācyuta-sat-kathodaye}
\]

\[
\text{mukunda-liṅgālaya-darśane drśau}
\text{tad-bhṛtya-gātra-sparṣe 'ṅga-saṅgamam}
\text{ghrāṇaṁ ca tat-pāda-saroja-saurabhe}
\text{śrīmat-tulasyā rasanāṁ tad-arpite}
\]

\[
\text{pādau hareḥ kṣetra-padānusarpāṇe}
\text{śiro hṛṣikeśa-padābhivandane}
\text{kāmaṁ ca dāsye na tu kāma-kāmyayā}
\text{yathottamaśloka-janāśrayā ratih}
\]

"King Ambariṣa first of all engaged his mind on the lotus feet of Lord Kṛṣṇa; then, one after another, he engaged his words in describing the transcendental qualities of the Lord, his hands in mopping the temple of the Lord, his ears in hearing of the ac-

\[
\text{tivities of the Lord, his eyes in seeing the transcendental forms of the Lord, his body in touching the bodies of the devotees, his sense of smell in smelling the scents of the lotus flowers offered to the Lord, his tongue in tasting the tulasi leaf offered at the temple of the Lord, his head in offering obeisances unto the Lord, and his desires in executing the mission of the Lord. All these transcendental activities are quite befitting a pure devotee."

This, then, is the perfection of yoga devoid of all material desire. If all our desires are for Kṛṣṇa, there is no scope for material desire. All material desire is automatically finished. We don’t have to try to concentrate artificially. All perfection is there in Kṛṣṇa consciousness because it is on the spiritual platform. Being on the spiritual platform, this supreme yoga is eternal, blissful, and full of knowledge. Therefore there are no misgivings or material impediments.
CHAPTER FIVE

Determination and Steadiness in Yoga

yathā dīpo nivāta-stho
neṅgate sopamā smṛtā
yogino yata-cittasya
yuñjato yogam ātmanāḥ

“As a lamp in a windless place does not waver, so the transcendentalist, whose mind is controlled, remains always steady in his meditation on the transcendent Self.” (Bg. 6.19)

If the mind is absorbed in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, it will remain as steady as the flame of a candle that is in a room where there is no wind. Therefore it is said that a truly Kṛṣṇa conscious person always absorbed in transcendence, in constant undisturbed meditation on his worshipable Lord, is as steady as a lamp or candle in a windless place. Just as the flame is not agitated, the mind is not agitated, and that steadiness is the perfection of yoga.

The state of one thus steadily situated in meditation on the transcendent Self, or the Supreme Lord, is described by Śrī Kṛṣṇa in the following verses of Bhagavad-gītā (6.20–23):

yatroparamate cittaṁ
niruddham yoga-sevayā
yatra caivātmāntmānam
paśyann ātmani tuṣyati

sukham ātyantikāṁ yat tad
buddhi-grāhyam atīndriyam
vetāl yatra na caivaṁ
dhitaś calati tatvataḥ
"The stage of perfection is called trance, or samādhi, when one’s mind is completely restrained from material mental activities by practice of yoga. This is characterized by one’s ability to see the Self by the pure mind and to relish and rejoice in the Self. In that joyous state, one is situated in boundless transcendental happiness and enjoys himself through transcendental senses. Established thus, one never departs from the truth, and upon gaining this he thinks there is no greater gain. Being situated in such a position, one is never shaken, even in the midst of greatest difficulty. This indeed is actual freedom from all miseries arising from material contact."

Samādhi does not mean making oneself void or merging into the void. That is impossible. Kleso ‘dhikataras teṣām avyaktāsaktacetāsām. Some yogīs say that one has to put an end to all activities and make himself motionless, but how is this possible? By nature, the living entity is a moving, acting spirit. "Motionless" means putting an end to material motion and being fixed in Kṛṣṇa consciousness. In such a state, one is no longer disturbed by material propensities. As one becomes materially motionless, one’s motions in Kṛṣṇa consciousness increase. As one becomes active in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, one becomes automatically motionless in respect to material activities.

I have often used the example of a restless child. Since it is impossible to make such a child motionless, it is necessary to give him some playthings or some pictures to look at. In this way, he will be engaged, or motionless in the sense that he will not be committing some mischief. But if one really wants to make him motionless, one must give him some engagement in Kṛṣṇa consciousness. Then there will be no scope for mischievous activities, due to realization in Kṛṣṇa consciousness. To be engaged in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, one should first realize, “I am Kṛṣṇa’s. I am not this matter. I am not of this nation or of this society. I do not belong to this rascal or that rascal. I am simply Kṛṣṇa’s.” This is motionless; this is full knowledge, realizing our actual position as part and parcel of Kṛṣṇa. As stated in the Fifteenth Chapter (Bg. 15.7), mamaivamśo jīva-loke: “The living entities in this conditioned world are My eternal, fragmental parts.” As soon as we understand this, we immediately cease our material activities, and this is what is meant by being motionless. In this state, one sees the Self by the pure mind and relishes and rejoices in the Self. “Pure mind” means understanding, “I belong to Kṛṣṇa.” At the present moment, the mind is contaminated because we are thinking, “I belong to this; I belong to that.” The mind is pure when it understands, “I belong to Kṛṣṇa.”

Rejoicing in the Self means rejoicing with Kṛṣṇa. Kṛṣṇa is the Supersoul, or the Superself. I am the individual soul, or the individual self. The Superself and the self enjoy together. Enjoyment cannot be alone; there must be two. What experience do we have of solitary enjoyment? Solitary enjoyment is not possible. Enjoyment means two: Kṛṣṇa, who is the Supersoul, and the individual soul.

If one is convinced that “I am part and parcel of Kṛṣṇa,” one is not disturbed even in the midst of the greatest difficulties, because one knows that Kṛṣṇa will give protection. That is surrender. To attain this position, one must try his best, use his intelligence, and believe in Kṛṣṇa. Bālasya neha śaraṇām pitarau nṛsiṁha (Bhāg. 7.9.19). If Kṛṣṇa does not protect us, nothing can save us. If Kṛṣṇa neglects us, there is no remedy, and whatever measures we take to try to protect ourselves will be ultimately defeated. There may be many expert physicians treating a diseased man, but that is no guarantee that he will live. If Kṛṣṇa so wills, a person will die despite the best physicians and medicines. On the other hand, if Kṛṣṇa is protecting us, we will survive even without medical treatment. When one is fully surrendered to Kṛṣṇa, he becomes happy, knowing that regardless of the situation, Kṛṣṇa will protect him. He is just like a child who is fully surrendered to his parents, confident that they are there to protect him. As stated by
Yāmunācārya in his *Stotra-ratna* (43), *kadāham aikāntika-nitya-kiṅkaraḥ praharṣayīṣyāmi sanātha-jivitam*: “O Lord, when shall I engage as Your permanent, eternal servant and always feel joyful to have such a perfect master?” If we know that there is someone very powerful who is our patron and savior, aren’t we happy? But if we try to act on our own and at our own risk, how can we be happy? Happiness means being in Kṛṣṇa consciousness and being convinced that “Kṛṣṇa will give me protection,” and being true to Kṛṣṇa. It is not possible to be happy otherwise.

Of course, Kṛṣṇa is giving all living entities protection, even in their rebellious condition (*eko bahunāṁ yo vibhūdhātī kāmān*). Without Kṛṣṇa’s protection, we cannot live for a second. When we admit and recognize Kṛṣṇa’s kindness, we become happy. Kṛṣṇa is protecting us at every moment, but we do not realize this, because we have taken life at our own risk. Kṛṣṇa gives us a certain amount of freedom, saying, “All right, do whatever you like. As far as possible, I will give you protection.” However, when the living entity is fully surrendered to Kṛṣṇa, Kṛṣṇa takes total charge and gives special protection. If a child grows up and doesn’t care for his father and acts freely, what can his father do? He can only say, “Do whatever you like.” But when a son puts himself fully under his father’s protection, he receives more care. As Kṛṣṇa states in the Ninth Chapter of *Bhagavad-gītā* (9.29),

\[
\text{sa niścayena yoktavyo yogo 'nirvinna-cetasā}
\]
\[
\text{saṅkalpa-prabhavān kāmāṁ}
\]
\[
\text{tyaktvā sarvān aśeṣataḥ}
\]
\[
\text{manasaivendriya-grāmaṁ}
\]
\[
\text{viniyamya samantataḥ}
\]

“One should engage oneself in the practice of yoga with undeviating determination and faith. One should abandon, without exception, all material desires born of false ego and thus control all the senses on all sides by the mind.” (Bg. 6.24)

As stated before, this determination can be attained only by one who does not indulge in sex. Celibacy makes one’s determination strong; therefore, from the very beginning Kṛṣṇa states that the yogi does not engage in sex. If one indulges in sex, one’s determination will be flickering. Therefore sex life should be controlled according to the rules and regulations governing the *grhastha-āśrama*, or sex should be given up altogether. Actually, it should be given up altogether, but if this is not possible, it should be controlled. Then determination will come because, after all, determination is a bodily affair. Determination means continuing to practice Kṛṣṇa consciousness with patience and perseverance. If one does not immediately attain the desired results, one should not think, “Oh, what is this Kṛṣṇa consciousness? I will give it up.” No, we must have determination and faith in Kṛṣṇa’s words.

In this regard, there is a mundane example. When a young girl gets married, she immediately hankers for a child. She thinks, “Now I am married. I must have a child immediately.” But how is this possible? The girl must have patience, become a faithful wife, serve her husband, and let her love grow. Eventually, because she is married, it is certain that she will have a child. Similarly, when we are in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, our perfection is guaranteed, but we must have patience and determination. We should think, “I must execute my duties and should not be impatient.” Impatience friend, we can understand that He is always protecting us, and in this way we can be happy.
is due to loss of determination, and loss of determination is due to excessive sex.

The yogi should be determined and should patiently prosecute Kṛṣṇa consciousness without deviation. One should be sure of success at the end and pursue this course with great perseverance, not becoming discouraged if there is any delay in the attainment of success. Success is sure for the rigid practitioner. Regarding bhakti-yoga, Rūpa Gosvāmī says,

\[\text{utsāhān niścayād dhairyāt} \\
\text{tat-tat-karma-pravātanaṁ} \\
\text{saṅga-tyāgāt sato vṛtteḥ} \\
\text{ṣaḍbhīr bhaktiḥ prasidhyati} \]

"The process of bhakti-yoga can be executed successfully with full-hearted enthusiasm, perseverance, and determination by following the prescribed duties in the association of devotees and by engaging completely in activities of goodness.” (Upadesāṁrita 3)

As for determination, one should follow the example of the sparrow who lost her eggs in the waves of the ocean. A sparrow laid her eggs on the shore of the ocean, but the big ocean carried away the eggs on its waves. The sparrow became very upset and asked the ocean to return her eggs. The ocean did not even consider her appeal. So the sparrow decided to dry up the ocean. She began to pick out the water in her small beak, and everyone laughed at her for her impossible determination. The news of her activity spread, and when at last Garuḍa, the gigantic bird carrier of Lord Viṣṇu, heard it, he became compassionate toward his small sister bird, and so he came to see her. Garuḍa was very pleased by the determination of the small sparrow, and he promised to help. Thus Garuḍa at once asked the ocean to return her eggs lest he himself take up the work of the sparrow. The ocean was frightened by this, and returned the eggs. Thus the sparrow became happy by the grace of Garuḍa.

Similarly, the practice of yoga, especially bhakti-yoga in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, may appear to be a very difficult job. But if anyone follows the principles with great determination, the Lord will surely help, for God helps those who help themselves.

\[\text{Śanātī Śanair uparamed} \\
\text{buddhyā dhrītī-grhitāyā} \\
\text{āśma-saṁsthān manah kṛtvā} \\
\text{na kiṁcid api cintyayet} \]

“Gradually, step by step, with full conviction, one should become situated in trance by means of intelligence, and thus the mind should be fixed on the Self alone and should think of nothing else.” (Bṛg. 6.25)

We are the self, and Kṛṣṇa is also the Self. When there is sunlight, we can see the sun and ourselves also. However, when there is dense darkness, we sometimes cannot even see our own body. Although the body is there, the darkness is so dense that I cannot see myself. But when the sunshine is present, I can see myself as well as the sun. Similarly, seeing the self means first of all seeing the Supreme Self, Kṛṣṇa. In the Kāṭha Upaniṣad it is stated, nītyo nītyāṅm cetanāṁ cetanānāṁ: “The Supreme Self is the chief eternal of all eternals, and He is the chief living being of all living beings.” Kṛṣṇa consciousness means fixing the mind on Kṛṣṇa, and when the mind is thus fixed, it is fixed on the complete whole. If the stomach is cared for and supplied nutritious food, all the bodily limbs are nourished, and we are in good health. Similarly, if we water the root of a tree, all the branches, leaves, flowers, and twigs are automatically taken care of. By rendering service to Kṛṣṇa, we automatically render the best service to all others.

As stated before, a Kṛṣṇa conscious person does not sit down idly. He knows that Kṛṣṇa consciousness is such an important philosophy that it should be distributed. Therefore the members of this Kṛṣṇa consciousness society are not just sitting in the temple but are going out on sāṅkīrtana parties, preaching and distributing this supreme philosophy. That is the mission of Śrī Kṛṣṇa Caitanya Mahāprabhu and His disciples. Other yogīs may be satisfied with their own elevation and sit in secluded places,
practicing yoga. For them, yoga is nothing more than their personal concern. A devotee, however, is not satisfied just in elevating his personal self.

\[\text{vāñchā-kalpatarubhyaś ca} \]
\[\text{krpā-sindhubhya eva ca} \]
\[\text{patitānāṁ pāvanebhyo namo namah} \]

“I offer my respectful obeisances unto all the Vaiṣṇava devotees of the Lord, who can fulfill the desires of everyone, just like desire trees, and who are full of compassion for the fallen souls.” A devotee displays great compassion toward conditioned souls. The word krpā means “mercy,” and sindhu means “ocean.” A devotee is an ocean of mercy, and he naturally wants to distribute this mercy. Lord Jesus Christ, for instance, was God conscious, Kṛṣṇa conscious, but he was not satisfied in keeping this knowledge within himself. Had he continued to live alone in God consciousness, he would not have met crucifixion. But no. Being a devotee and naturally compassionate, he also wanted to take care of others by making them God conscious. Although he was forbidden to preach God consciousness, he continued to do so at the risk of his own life. This is the nature of a devotee.

It is therefore stated in Bhagavad-gītā (18.68–69) that the devotee who preaches is most dear to the Lord.

\[\text{ya idam paramam guhyam} \]
\[\text{mad-bhakteṣv abhidhāsyati} \]
\[\text{bhaktiṁ mayi parāṁ kṛtvā} \]
\[\text{mām evaśyaty asaṁsayaḥ} \]

“For one who explains the supreme secret to the devotees, devotional service is guaranteed, and at the end he will come back to Me.”

\[\text{na ca tasmān manusyeṣu} \]
\[\text{kaścin me priya-kṛtamah} \]
\[\text{bhavitā na ca me tasmād} \]
\[\text{anyaḥ priyatara bhuvi} \]

“There is no servant in this world more dear to Me than he, nor will there ever be one more dear.” Therefore the devotees go out to preach, and going forth, they sometimes meet opposing elements. Sometimes they are defeated, sometimes disappointed, sometimes able to convince, sometimes unable. It is not that every devotee is well equipped to preach. Just as there are different types of people, there are three classes of devotees. In the third class are those who have no faith. If they are engaged in devotional service officially, for some ulterior purpose, they cannot achieve the highest perfectional stage. Most probably they will slip, after some time. They may become engaged, but because they haven’t complete conviction and faith, it is very difficult for them to continue in Kṛṣṇa consciousness. We have practical experience in discharging our missionary activity that some people come and apply themselves to Kṛṣṇa consciousness with some hidden motive, and as soon as they are economically a little well situated, they give up this process and take to their old ways again. It is only by faith that one can advance in Kṛṣṇa consciousness. As far as the development of faith is concerned, one who is well versed in the literatures of devotional service and has attained the stage of firm faith is called a first-class person in Kṛṣṇa consciousness. And in the second class are those who are not very advanced in understanding the devotional scriptures but who automatically have firm faith that kṛṣṇa-bhakti, or service to Kṛṣṇa, is the best course and so in good faith have taken it up. Thus they are superior to the third class, who have neither perfect knowledge of the scriptures nor good faith but by association and simplicity are trying to follow. The third-class person in Kṛṣṇa consciousness may fall down, but when one is in the second class or first class, he does not fall down. One in the first class will surely make progress and achieve the result at the end. As far as the third-class person in Kṛṣṇa consciousness is concerned, although he has faith in the conviction that devotional service to Kṛṣṇa is very good, he has no knowledge of Kṛṣṇa through the scriptures like the Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam and Bhagavad-gītā. Sometimes these third-class persons in Kṛṣṇa consciousness have some tendency toward karma-yoga and jñāna-yoga, and sometimes they are disturbed,
but as soon as the infection of *karma-yoga* or *jñāna-yoga* is vanquished, they become second-class or first-class persons in Kṛṣṇa consciousness. Faith in Kṛṣṇa is also divided into three stages and described in *Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam*. First-class attachment, second-class attachment, and third-class attachment are also explained in *Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam*, in the Eleventh Canto.

However one is situated, one should have the determination to go out and preach Kṛṣṇa consciousness. That endeavor should at least be there, and one who so attempts to preach renders the best service to the Lord. Despite opposition, one should attempt to elevate people to the highest standard of self-realization. One who has actually seen the truth, who is in the trance of self-realization, cannot just sit idly. He must come out. Rāmānuja-cārya, for instance, declared the Hare Kṛṣṇa *mantra* publicly. He did not distribute it secretly for some fee. Recently, an Indian *yogi* came to America to give some “private *mantra*.” But if a *mantra* has any power, why should it be private? If a *mantra* is powerful, why should it not be publicly declared so that everyone can take advantage of it? We are saying that this Hare Kṛṣṇa *mahā-mantra* can save everyone, and we are therefore distributing it publicly, free of charge. But in this age, people are so foolish that they are not prepared to accept it. Rather, they hanker after some secret *mantra* and therefore pay some “yogi” thirty-five dollars or whatever for some “private *mantra*.” This is because people want to be cheated. But the devotees are preaching without charge, declaring in the streets, parks, and everywhere, “Here! Here is the Hare Kṛṣṇa *mahā-mantra*. Come on, take it!” But under the spell of māyā, illusion, people are thinking, “Oh, this is not good.” But if you charge something and bluff and cheat people, they will follow you.

In this regard, there is a Hindi verse stating that Kali-yuga is such an abominable age that if one speaks the truth, people will come and beat him. But if one cheats, bluff and lies, people will be bewildered, will like it, and will accept it. If I say, “I am God,” people will say, “Oh, here is Svāmījī. Here is God.” In this age, people don’t have sufficient brain power to inquire, “How have you become God? What are the symptoms of God? Do you have all these symptoms?” Because people do not make such inquiries, they are cheated. Therefore it is necessary to be fixed in consciousness of the Self. Unless one knows and understands the real self and the Superself, one will be cheated. Real *yoga* means understanding this process of self-realization.

\[yato yato niścalatī \]
\[manās cañicalam asthiram\]
\[tatas tato niyamaitad\]
\[ātmany eva vaśam nayet\]

“From whatever and wherever the mind wanders due to its flickering and unsteady nature, one must certainly withdraw it and bring it back under the control of the Self.” (Bg. 6.26) This is the real yogic process. If you are trying to concentrate your mind on Kṛṣṇa, and the mind is diverted—wandering to some cinema or wherever—you should withdraw the mind, thinking, “Not there, please. Here.” This is *yoga*: not allowing the mind to wander from Kṛṣṇa.

Very intense training is required to keep the mind fixed on Kṛṣṇa while sitting in one place. That is very hard work indeed. If one is not so practiced and tries to imitate this process, he will surely be confused. Instead, we always have to engage ourselves in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, dovetailing everything we do to Kṛṣṇa. Our usual activities should be so molded that they are rendered for Kṛṣṇa’s sake. In this way the mind will remain fixed on Kṛṣṇa. As stated before, we should not try to sit down and stare at the tip of our nose. At the present moment, attempts to engage in that type of *yoga* are artificial. Rather, the recommended method is chanting loudly and hearing Hare Kṛṣṇa. Then, even if the mind is diverted, it will be forced to concentrate on the sound vibration “Kṛṣṇa.” It isn’t necessary to withdraw the mind from everything; it will automatically be withdrawn, because it will be concentrated on the sound vibration. If we hear an automobile pass, our attention is automatically diverted. Similarly, if we constantly chant Hare Kṛṣṇa, our mind will automatically be fixed on Kṛṣṇa, although we are accustomed to think of so many other things.
The nature of the mind is flickering and unsteady. But a self-realized yogi has to control the mind; the mind should not control him. At the present moment, the mind is controlling us (go-dāsa). The mind is telling us, “Please, why not look at that beautiful girl?” and so we look. It says, “Why not drink that nice liquor?” and we say, “Yes.” It says, “Why not smoke this cigarette?” “Yes,” we say. “Why not go to this restaurant for such palatable food? Why not do this? Why not do that?” In this way, the mind is dictating, and we are following. Material life means being controlled by the senses, or the mind, which is the center of all the senses. Being controlled by the mind means being controlled by the senses, because the senses are the mind’s assistants. The master mind dictates, “Go see that,” and the eyes, following the directions of the mind, look at the sense object. The mind tells us to go to a certain place, and the legs, under the mind’s directions, carry us there. Thus, being under the direction of the mind means coming under the control of the senses. If we can control the mind, we will not be under the control of the senses. One who is under the control of the senses is known as go-dāsa. The word go means “senses,” and dāsa means “servant.” One who is master of the senses is called go-vāmi, because svāmi means “master.” Therefore, one who has the title go-vāmi is one who has mastered the senses. As long as one is servant of the senses, he cannot be called a go-vāmi or svāmi. Unless one masters the senses, his acceptance of the title svāmi or go-vāmi is just a form of cheating. It was Rūpa Gosvāmi who thus defined the meaning of the word govāmi. Originally, Sanātana Gosvāmi and Rūpa Gosvāmi were not govāmīs but were government ministers. It was only when they became disciples of Lord Caitanya Mahāprabhu that they became govāmīs. So govāmi is not a hereditary title but a qualification. One becomes so qualified under the directions of a bona fide spiritual master. Only when one has attained perfection in sense control can he be called a govāmi and become a spiritual master in his turn. Unless one can master the senses, he will simply be a bogus spiritual master.

This is explained by Rūpa Gosvāmi in his Upadeśāmṛta (1):

```
vaCo veGaM manasah krodha-veGaM
jīhvā-veGaM udaropashta-veGaM
etān veGān yo viṣaheta dhīraḥ
sarvām apiṁām prthiviṁ sa śīyāt
```

“A sober person who can tolerate the urge to speak, the mind’s demands, the actions of anger, and the urges of the tongue, belly, and genitals is qualified to make disciples all over the world.” In this verse Rūpa Gosvāmi mentions six “pushings” (vegams). This pushing is a kind of impetus. For instance, when nature calls, we have to go to the toilet, and we cannot check this urge. So this urge is called vegam, a kind of pushing. According to Rūpa Gosvāmi, there are six vegams. Vāco vegam is the urge to talk unnecessarily. That is a kind of pushing of the tongue. Then there is krodha-vegam, the urge to become angry. When we are pushed to anger, we cannot check ourselves, and sometimes men become so angry that they commit murder. Similarly, the mind is pushing, dictating, “You must go there at once,” and we immediately go where we are told. The word jīhvā-vegam refers to the tongue’s being urged to taste palatable foods. Udara-vegam refers to the urges of the belly. Although the belly is full, it still wants more food, and that is a kind of pushing of the belly. And when we yield to the pushings of the tongue and the belly, the urges of the genitals become very strong, and sex is required. If one does not control his mind or his tongue, how can he control his genitals? In this way, there are so many pushings, so much so that the body is a kind of pushing machine. Rūpa Gosvāmi therefore tells us that one can become a spiritual master only when he can control all these urges.

Etān veGān yo viṣaheta dhīraḥ sarvām apiṁām prthiviṁ sa śīyāt: “One who can control the pushings and remain steady can make disciples all over the world.” The word dhīra means “steady, sober.” Only one who is a dhīra is qualified to make disciples. This all depends on one’s training. Indeed, yoga means training the mind and the senses to be fixed on the Self. This is not possible by meditating only fifteen minutes a day and then going out and...
doing whatever the senses dictate. How can the problems of life be solved so cheaply? If we want something precious, we have to pay for it. By the grace of Lord Caitanya, this payment has been made very easy—just chant Hare Kṛṣṇa. By our chanting, this system of control, this yoga system, becomes perfected. *Ihā haite sarva siddhi haibe tomāra.* Thus Lord Caitanya has blessed us. Simply by chanting Hare Kṛṣṇa, we will achieve the perfection of self-realization. In this age of Kali-yuga, when people are so fallen, other processes will not be successful. This is the only process, and it is easy, sublime, effective, and practical. By it, one can realize oneself.

According to Kṛṣṇa in the Ninth Chapter of *Bhagavad-gītā* (9.2), this process is the most sublime.

```
raja-vidya raja-guhyam
pavitram idam uttamam
pratyakṣavagamam dharmyan
susukham kartum ayyayam
```

“This knowledge is the king of education, the most secret of all secrets. It is the purest knowledge, and because it gives direct perception of the self by realization, it is the perfection of religion. It is everlasting, and it is joyfully performed.”

After eating, a man can understand that his hunger has been satisfied; similarly, by following the principles of Kṛṣṇa consciousness, one can understand that he has advanced in self-realization.

**CHAPTER SIX**

**Perception of the Supersoul**

```
prasānta-manasaṁ hy enāṁ
yogināṁ sukham uttāmaṁ
upaiti śānta-rajasāṁ
brahma-bhūtaṁ akalmaśaṁ
```

“The yogī whose mind is fixed on Me verily attains the highest happiness. By virtue of his identity with Brahman, he is liberated; his mind is peaceful, his passions are quieted, and he is freed from sin.” (Bg. 6.27)

```
yuñjann evaṁ sadātmānaṁ
yogī vigata-kalmaśaṁ
sukhena brahma-samsparsaṁ
atyantaṁ sukham aśnute
```

“Steady in the Self, being freed from all material contamination, the yogī achieves the highest perfectional stage of happiness in touch with the Supreme Consciousness.” (Bg. 6.28)

So here is the perfection: “The yogī whose mind is fixed on Me.” Since Kṛṣṇa is speaking, the “Me” refers to Kṛṣṇa. If I am speaking and saying, “Give me a glass of water,” I do not intend that the water be supplied to someone else. We must therefore clearly understand that, since *Bhagavad-gītā* is being spoken by Śrī Kṛṣṇa, when He says “unto Me,” He means unto Kṛṣṇa. Unfortunately, there are many commentators who deviate from these clear instructions. I do not know why; their motives are no doubt nefarious.
\textbf{THE PATH OF PERFECTION}

\textit{\textbf{sarva-bhūta-stham ātmānam}}

\textit{\textbf{sarva-bhūtāni cātmāni}}

\textit{\textbf{īkṣate yoga-yuktātma}}

\textit{\textbf{sarvatra sama-darśanāḥ}}

“A true yogī observes Me in all beings, and also sees every being in Me. Indeed, the self-realized man sees Me everywhere.” (Bg. 6.29) \textit{\textbf{Sarva-bhūta-stham ātmānam: “A true yogī observes Me in all beings.”}} How is this possible? Some people say that all beings are Krṣṇa and that therefore there is no point in worshiping Krṣṇa separately. Consequently, such people take to humanitarian activities, claiming that such work is better. They say, “Why should Krṣṇa be worshiped? Krṣṇa says that one should see Krṣṇa in every being. Therefore let us serve \textit{\textbf{dāridra-nārāyaṇa}}, the man in the street.” Such misinterpreters do not know the proper techniques, which have to be learned under a bona fide spiritual master.

A true yogī, as explained before, is the devotee of Krṣṇa, and the most advanced devotee goes forth to preach Krṣṇa consciousness. Why? Because he sees Krṣṇa in all beings. How is this? Because he sees that all beings are part and parcel of Krṣṇa. He also understands that since these beings have forgotten Krṣṇa, it is his duty to awaken them to Krṣṇa consciousness. Sometimes missionaries go forth to educate primitive, uneducated people just because they see that they are human beings and so deserve to be educated in order to understand the value of life. This is due to the missionary’s sympathy. The devotee is similarly motivated. He understands that everyone should know himself to be part and parcel of Krṣṇa. The devotee understands that people are suffering due to their forgetfulness of Krṣṇa.

Thus the devotee sees Krṣṇa in everything. He is not under the illusion that everything has become Krṣṇa. Rather, he sees every living being as the son of God. If I say that this boy is the son of Mr. Johnson, do I mean that this boy is Mr. Johnson himself? I may see Mr. Johnson in this boy because this boy is his son, but the distinction remains. If I see every living being as the son of Krṣṇa, I see Krṣṇa in every being. This should not be difficult to understand. It is neither an association nor a vision but a fact.

When a devotee sees a cat or a dog, he sees Krṣṇa in him. He knows that a cat, for instance, is a living being, and that due to his past deeds he has received the body of a cat. This is due to his forgetfulness. The devotee helps the cat by giving it some krṣṇa-prasāda so that someday the cat will come to Krṣṇa consciousness. This is seeing Krṣṇa in the cat. The devotee does not think, “Oh, here is Krṣṇa. Let me embrace this cat and serve this cat as God.” Such thinking is nonsensical. If one sees a tiger, he does not say, “Oh, here is Krṣṇa. Come one, please eat me.” The devotee does not embrace all beings as Krṣṇa but rather sympathizes with every living being because he sees all beings as part and parcel of Krṣṇa. In this way, “the true yogī observes Me in all beings.” This is real vision.

Whatever is done in Krṣṇa consciousness, knowingly or unknowingly, will have its effect. Children who bow down or try to vibrate Krṣṇa’s names or clap during kirtana are actually accumulating so much in their bank account of Krṣṇa consciousness. Fire will act, whether one is a child or an adult. If a child touches fire, the fire will burn. The fire does not say, “Oh, I will not burn him. He is a child and does not know.” No, the fire will always act as fire. Similarly, Krṣṇa is the supreme spirit, and if a child partakes in Krṣṇa consciousness, he will be affected. Krṣṇa will act, whether the child knows or does not know. Every living being should be given a chance to partake of Krṣṇa consciousness because Krṣṇa is there and will act. Therefore everyone is being invited to come and take \textit{\textbf{prasāda}}, because this \textit{\textbf{prasāda}} will someday take effect.

We should be careful not to make the mistake of thinking that everyone is Krṣṇa; rather, we should see Krṣṇa in everyone. Krṣṇa is all-pervading. Why is He to be seen only in human beings? As stated in \textit{\textbf{Brahma-saṁhitā}}, He is also present within the atom: \textit{\textbf{aṇḍāntara-stha-paramāṇu-cayāntara-stham}}. The word \textit{\textbf{paramāṇu}} means “atom,” and we should understand that Krṣṇa is present within every atom. “A true yogī observes Me in all beings and also sees every being in Me.” How does the yogī see every being “in Me”? This is possible because the true yogī knows that
come thirsty, and if they have no water, they die. Once a person has learned the philosophy of Bhagavad-gītā, whenever he drinks water, he sees Kṛṣṇa. And when does a day pass when we do not drink water? This is the way of Kṛṣṇa consciousness. “I am the light of the sun and the moon.” So whether in the day or the night, we see either sunshine or moonshine. How, then, can we forget Kṛṣṇa? This, then, is the way of perfect yoga. We have to see Kṛṣṇa everywhere and at all times.

yo māṁ paśyati sarvatra
sarvaṁ ca mayi paśyati
tasyāham na prāṇaṣyāmi
sa ca me na prāṇaṣyati

“For one who sees Me everywhere and sees everything in Me, I am never lost, nor is he ever lost to Me.” (Bg. 6.30) This is sadā tad-bhāva-bhavitah: always remembering Kṛṣṇa. If we practice living in this way, we never lose Kṛṣṇa and are never lost to Kṛṣṇa, and at the time of death we are therefore sure to go to Kṛṣṇa. If we are not lost to Kṛṣṇa, where can we go but to Kṛṣṇa? In the Ninth Chapter, Kṛṣṇa tells Arjuna, kaunteya pratijñāni na me bhaktah pranaṣyati (Bg. 9.31): “O son of Kuntī, declare it boldly that My devotee never perishes.”

Simply don’t lose sight of Kṛṣṇa. That is the perfection of life. We can forget everything else, but we should never forget Kṛṣṇa. If we can remember Kṛṣṇa, we are the richest of men, even though people may see us as very poor. Although Rūpa Gosvāmī and Sanātana Gosvāmī were learned scholars and very opulent ministers, they adopted the poor life of mendicants. In his Śrī Śad-gosvāmī-aśṭaka (verse 4), Śrīnivāsa Ācārya thus describes the six Gosvāmīs:

tyaktvā tuṁnam aśeṣa-maṇḍala-pati-śreṇiṁ sadā tucchavit
bhūtvā dīna-ganeśakau karunayā kaupīna-kanthāsrītau
gopi-bhāva-rasāṁritābdhi-lahari-kalolla-magnau muhur
vande rūpa-sanātanau raghu-yugau Śrī-jīva-gopālakau

“I offer my respectful obeisances unto the six Gosvāmīs—Śrī
Rūpa Gosvāmī, Śrī Sanātana Gosvāmī, Śrī Raghunātha Bhaṭṭa Gosvāmī, Śrī Raghunātha dāsa Gosvāmī, Śrī Jiva Gosvāmī, and Śrī Gopāla Bhaṭṭa Gosvāmī—who cast off all aristocratic association as insignificant. To deliver poor, conditioned souls, they accepted loincloths and became mendicants, but they were always merged in the ecstatic ocean of the gopīs' love for Kṛṣṇa, and they were always bathing repeatedly in the waves of that ocean."

The words kaupīna-kanṭhāsrītau indicate that the Gosvāmīs were simply wearing underwear and a loincloth and nothing else. In other words, they accepted the poorest way of life as mendicants. Generally, if one is habituated to living according to a high standard, he cannot immediately lower his standard. If a rich man accepts such a poor condition, he cannot live, but the Gosvāmīs lived very happily. How was this possible? Gopi-bhava-rasāmṛtādbhadi-lahari-kallola-magnau muhurvand vande rūpa-sanātanau raghu-yugau śrī-jiva-gopālakau. They were actually rich because they were constantly dipping themselves in the ocean of the loving affairs of the gopīs. If one simply thinks of the gopīs' love for Kṛṣṇa, one is not lost. There are many ways not to lose sight of Kṛṣṇa. If we do not lose sight of Kṛṣṇa, then we will not be lost.

A person in Kṛṣṇa consciousness certainly sees Lord Kṛṣṇa everywhere, and he sees everything in Kṛṣṇa. Such a person may appear to see all separate manifestations of the material nature, but in each and every instance he is conscious of Kṛṣṇa, knowing that everything is the manifestation of Kṛṣṇa's energy. Nothing can exist without Kṛṣṇa, and Kṛṣṇa is the Lord of everything—this is the basic principle of Kṛṣṇa consciousness. How does the devotee know that everything is the manifestation of Kṛṣṇa's energy? First of all, a Kṛṣṇa conscious person is a philosopher. If he sees a tree, he thinks, "What is this tree?" He then sees that the tree has a material body—just as he has a material body—and that the tree is also a living entity, but due to the tree's past misdeeds, he has obtained such an abominable body that he cannot even move. The tree's body is material, material energy, and the devotee automatically questions, "Whose energy? Kṛṣṇa's energy. Therefore the tree is connected to Kṛṣṇa. Being a living entity, the tree is part and parcel of Kṛṣṇa." In this way, the Kṛṣṇa conscious person does not see the tree, but sees Kṛṣṇa present. That is Kṛṣṇa consciousness: you don't see the tree. You see Kṛṣṇa. That is the perfection of yoga, and that is also samādhi.

Kṛṣṇa consciousness is the development of love of Kṛṣṇa—a position transcendental even to material liberation. Why does the Kṛṣṇa conscious person take such an account of the tree? Because he has love for Kṛṣṇa. If you love your child and your child is away, you think of him when you see his shoes. You think, "Oh, this is my dear child's shoe." It is not that you love the shoe, but the child. The shoe, however, evokes that love. Similarly, as soon as we see Kṛṣṇa's energy manifested in a living entity, we love that entity because we love Kṛṣṇa. Therefore, if we love Kṛṣṇa, universal love is accounted for. Otherwise "universal love" is nonsensical, because it is not possible to love everybody without loving Kṛṣṇa. If we love Kṛṣṇa, universal love is automatically there. Without being Kṛṣṇa conscious, a person may say, "Here is my American brother, and here is my Indian brother. Now let us eat this cow." Such a person may look on other humans as brothers, but he looks on the cow as food. Is this universal love? A Kṛṣṇa conscious person, however, thinks, "Oh, here is a cow. Here is a dog. They are part and parcel of Kṛṣṇa, but somehow or other they have acquired different bodies. This does not mean that they are not my brothers. How can I kill and eat my brothers?" That is true universal love—rooted in love for Kṛṣṇa. Without such Kṛṣṇa consciousness, there is no question of love at all.

Kṛṣṇa consciousness is the stage beyond self-realization in which the devotee becomes one with Kṛṣṇa in the sense that Kṛṣṇa becomes everything for the devotee, and the devotee becomes full in loving Kṛṣṇa. An intimate relationship between the Lord and the devotee then exists. In that stage, the living entity attains his immortality. Nor is the Personality of Godhead ever out of sight of the devotee. To merge in Kṛṣṇa is spiritual annihilation. A devotee takes no such risk. It is stated in the Brahma-saṁhitā (5.38),

premaṁjanā-cchurita-bhakti-vilocanena
santaḥ sadaiva hṛdayeṣu vilokayanti
“I worship the primeval Lord, Govinda, who is always seen by the devotee whose eyes are anointed with the pulp of love. He is seen in His eternal form of Syamasundara, situated within the heart of the devotee.” One who has developed such a love for Kṛṣṇa sees Syamasundara, Kartāmesāna, always within his heart. At this stage, Lord Kṛṣṇa never disappears from the sight of the devotee, nor does the devotee ever lose sight of the Lord. In the case of a yogī who sees the Lord as Paramātma within the heart, the same applies. Such a yogī turns into a pure devotee and cannot bear to live for a moment without seeing the Lord within himself.

This is the real process by which we can see God. God is not our order supplier. We cannot demand, “Come and show Yourself.” No, we first have to qualify ourselves. Then we can see God at every moment and everywhere.

sarva-bhūta-sthitam yo mām
bhajaty eka-tvam āśhitah
sarvathā vartamāno 'pi
sa yogī mayā vartate

“The yogī who knows that I and the Supersoul within all creatures are one worships Me and remains always in Me in all circumstances.” (Bg. 6.31)

A yogī who is practicing meditation on the Supersoul sees within himself the plenary portion of Kṛṣṇa as Viṣṇu—with four hands, holding conchshell, wheel, club, and lotus flower. This manifestation of Viṣṇu, which is the yogī's object of concentration, is Kṛṣṇa's plenary portion. As stated in Brahma-saṁhitā (5.48),

yasyaika-niśvasita-kālām athāvalambya
jivaṁ loma-vila-jā jagad-anda-nāthāḥ
viṣṇur mahān sa iha yasya kalā-visēṣo
govindam ādi-puruṣām tam aham bhajāmi

“The Brahmās and other lords of the mundane worlds appear from the pores of Mahā- Viṣṇu and remain alive for the duration of His one exhalation. I adore the primeval Lord, Govinda, for Mahā-Viṣṇu is a portion of His plenary portion.” The words govin-dam ādi-puruṣām tam aham bhajāmi (“I worship Govinda, the primeval Lord”) are most important. The word ādi means “original,” and puruṣām means “the Lord as the original male, the original enjoyer.” And who is this Govinda whose plenary portion is the Mahā-Viṣṇu? And what is the function of the Mahā-Viṣṇu?

In every universe there is a primary, original living entity known as Brahmā. The life of Brahmā is the life of the universe, and this life exists during only one breathing period (exhalation and inhalation) of the Mahā-Viṣṇu. The Mahā-Viṣṇu lies on the Causal Ocean, and when He exhales, millions of universes issue from His body as bubbles and then develop. When the Mahā-Viṣṇu inhales, these millions of universes return within Him, and this is called the process of annihilation. That, in essence, is the position of these material universes: they come out from the body of the Mahā-Viṣṇu and then again return. In the Ninth Chapter of Bhagavad-gītā (9.7) it is also indicated that these material universes are manifest at a certain period and are then annihilated.

sarva-bhūtāni kaunteya
prakṛtiṁ yānti māmikām
kalpa-kṣaye punas tāni
kalpādau vīṣṭāmbh aham

“O son of Kunti, at the end of the millennium, every material manifestation enters into My nature, and at the beginning of another millennium, by My potency I again create.” The creation, maintenance, and annihilation of this material cosmic manifestation are completely dependent on the supreme will of the Personality of Godhead. “At the end of the millennium” means at the death of Brahmā. Brahmā lives for one hundred years, and his one day is calculated at 4,300,000,000 of our earthly years. His
night is of the same duration. His month consists of thirty such days and nights, and his year of twelve months. After one hundred such years, when Brahmā dies, the devastation or annihilation takes place; this means that the energy manifested by the Supreme Lord is again wound up in Himself. That is, the Mahā-Viṣṇu inhales. Then again, when there is need to manifest the cosmic world, it is done by His will: “Although I am one, I shall become many.” This is the Vedic aphorism. He expands Himself in this material energy, and the whole cosmic manifestation again takes place.

Since the entire creation and annihilation of the material universes depend on the exhaling and inhaling of the Mahā-Viṣṇu, we can hardly imagine the magnitude of that Mahā-Viṣṇu. And yet it is said here that this Mahā-Viṣṇu is but a plenary portion of the plenary portion of Kṛṣṇa, who is the original Govinda. The Mahā-Viṣṇu enters into each universe as Garbhodakāśayī Viṣṇu, and Garbhodakāśayī Viṣṇu further expands as Kṣīrodakāśayī Viṣṇu, and it is this Viṣṇu form that enters into the heart of every living entity. In this way, Viṣṇu is manifest throughout the creation. Thus the yogī concentrate their minds on the Kṣīrodakāśayī Viṣṇu form within the heart. As stated in the last chapter of Bhagavad-gītā (18.61),

\[
\text{iśvaraḥ sarva-bhūtaṁ}
\text{hrd-deṣe 'ṛjuna tiṣṭhati}
\text{bhrāmayaḥ sarva-bhūtāṁ}
\text{yantrārūḍhāṁ māyāya}
\]

“The Supreme Lord is situated in everyone’s heart, O Arjuna, and is directing the wanderings of all living entities, who are seated as on a machine, made of the material energy.”

Thus, according to the yogic process, the yogī finds out where the Kṣīrodakāśayī Viṣṇu is seated within the heart, and when he finds this form there, he concentrates on Him. The yogī should know that this Viṣṇu is not different from Kṛṣṇa. Kṛṣṇa in this form of Supersoul is situated in everyone’s heart. Furthermore, there is no difference between the innumerable Supersouls present in the innumerable hearts of living entities. For example, there is only one sun in the sky, but this sun may be reflected in millions of buckets of water. Or, one may ask millions and trillions of people, “Where is the sun?” And each will say, “Over my head.” The sun is one, but it is reflected countless times. According to the Vedas, the living entities are innumerable; there is no possibility of counting them. Just as the sun can be reflected in countless buckets of water, Viṣṇu, the Supreme Personality of Godhead, can live in each and everyone’s heart. It is this form that is Kṛṣṇa’s plenary portion, and it is this form on which the yogī concentrates.

One who is engaged in Kṛṣṇa consciousness is already a perfect yogī. In fact, there is no difference between a Kṛṣṇa conscious devotee always engaged in the transcendental loving service of Kṛṣṇa and a perfect yogī engaged in meditation on the Supersoul. There is no difference between a yogī in samādhi (in a trance meditating on the Viṣṇu form) and a Kṛṣṇa conscious person engaged in different activities. The devotee—even though engaged in various activities while in material existence—remains always situated in Kṛṣṇa. This is confirmed in the Bhakti-rāṣṭramārtha-sindhu of Śrīla Rūpa Gosvāmī: nikhilāsv api avasthāsu jīvan-muktaḥ sa ucyate. A devotee of the Lord, always acting in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, is automatically liberated. This is also confirmed in the Fourteenth Chapter of Bhagavad-gītā (14.26):

\[
māṁ ca yo 'vyabhicārena
\text{bhakti-yogena sevate}
\text{sa gunān samātyaitān}
\text{brahma-bhūyāya kalpate}
\]

“One who engages in full devotional service, who does not fall down in any circumstance, at once transcends the modes of material nature and thus comes to the level of Brahmā.”

Thus the devotee engaged in unalloyed devotional service has already transcended the material modes of nature. Being situated on the Brahmān platform means being liberated. There are three platforms: the bodily, or sensual; the mental; and the spiritual.

\[
\]
The spiritual platform is called the Brahman platform, and liberation means being situated on that platform. Being conditioned souls, we are presently situated on the bodily, or sensual, platform. Those who are a little advanced—speculators, philosophers—are situated on the mental platform. Above this is the platform of liberation, of Brahman realization.

That the devotee, always acting in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, is automatically situated on the liberated platform of Brahman is also confirmed in the Nārada-paṭiṣṭātra:

\[
\begin{align*}
dik-kālādy-anavacchinne \\
kṛṣṇe ceto vidhāya ca \\
tan-mayo bhavati kṣipram \\
jīvo brahmani yojayet
\end{align*}
\]

“By concentrating one’s attention on the transcendental form of Kṛṣṇa, who is all-pervading and beyond time and space, one becomes absorbed in thinking of Kṛṣṇa and then attains the happy state of transcendental association with Him.”

Kṛṣṇa consciousness is the highest stage of trance in yoga practice. This very understanding that Kṛṣṇa is present as Paramātman in everyone’s heart makes the yogī faultless. The Vedaś confirm this inconceivable potency of the Lord as follows:

\[
\begin{align*}
eko 'pi san bahudāḥ yo 'vabhāti \\
aisvāryād rūpaṁ ekāṁ ca sūryavad bahudheyate
\end{align*}
\]

“Viṣṇu is one, and yet He is certainly all-pervading. By His inconceivable potency, in spite of His one form, He is present everywhere. As the sun, He appears in many places at once.”

\[
\begin{align*}
ātmaupamyena sarvatra \\
samām paśyati yo 'juna \\
sukhaṁ vā yadi vā duḥkhaṁ \\
sa yogī paramo mātaḥ
\end{align*}
\]

“He is a perfect yogī who, by comparison to his own self, sees the true equality of all beings, both in their happiness and distress, O Arjuna!” (Bg. 6.32) This is true universal vision. It is not that God is sitting in my heart and not in the heart of a dog, cat, or cow. Sarva-bhūtānām means that He is sitting in the hearts of all living entities, in the human heart and in the ant’s heart. The only difference is that cats and dogs cannot realize this. A human being, if he tries to follow the sāṅkhya-yoga or bhakti-yoga system, is able to understand, and this is the prerogative of human life. If we miss this opportunity, we suffer a great loss, for we have undergone the evolutionary process and have passed through more than eight million species of life in order to get this human form. We should therefore be conscious of this and careful not to miss this opportunity. We have a good body, the human form, and intelligence and civilization. We should not live like animals and struggle hard for existence but should utilize our time thinking peacefully and understanding our relationship with the Supreme Lord. This is the instruction of Bhagavad-gītā: Don’t lose this opportunity; utilize it properly.
CHAPTER SEVEN

Yoga for the Modern Age

\textit{arjuna uvāca}

\textit{yo 'yaṁ yogas tvayā proktaḥ}

\textit{sāmyena madhusūdana}

\textit{etasyāham na paśyāmi}

\textit{caṇcalatvāt sthītiṁ sthīrāṁ}

"Arjuna said: O Madhusūdana, the system of \textit{yoga} which You have summarized appears impractical and unendurable to me, for the mind is restless and unsteady." (Bg. 6.33)

This is the crucial test of the eightfold \textit{aṣṭāṅga-yoga} system expounded herein by Lord Śrī Kṛṣṇa. It has already been explained that one must sit in a certain way and concentrate the mind on the form of Viśṇu seated within the heart. According to the \textit{aṣṭāṅga-yoga} system, first of all one has to control the senses, follow all the rules and regulations, practice the sitting posture and the breathing process, concentrate the mind on the form of Viśṇu within the heart, and then become absorbed in that form. There are eight processes in this \textit{aṣṭāṅga-yoga} system, but herein Arjuna says quite frankly that this \textit{aṣṭāṅga-yoga} system is very difficult. Indeed, he says that it "appears impractical and unendurable to me."

Actually, the \textit{aṣṭāṅga-yoga} system is not impractical, for were it impractical, Lord Kṛṣṇa would not have taken so much trouble to describe it. It is not impractical, but it \textit{appears} impractical. What
may be impractical for one man may be practical for another. Arjuna is representative of the common man in the sense that he is not a mendicant or a sannyâsi or a scholar. He is on the battlefield fighting for his kingdom, and in this sense he is an ordinary man engaged in a worldly activity. He is concerned with earning a livelihood, supporting his family, and so on. Arjuna has many problems, just as the common man, and generally this system of ashtânga-yoga is impractical for the ordinary common man. That is the point being made. It is practical for one who has already completely renounced everything and can sit in a secluded, sacred place on the side of a hill or in a cave. But who can do this in this age? Although Arjuna was a great warrior, a member of the royal family, and a very advanced person, he proclaims this yoga system impractical. And what are we in comparison to Arjuna? If we attempt this system, failure is certain.

Therefore this system of mysticism described by Lord Krsna to Arjuna beginning with the words sucuâ dese and ending with yogi paramah is here rejected by Arjuna out of a feeling of inability. As stated before, it is not possible for an ordinary man to leave home and go to a secluded place in the mountains or jungles to practice yoga in this age of Kali. The present age is characterized by a bitter struggle for a life of short duration. As Kali-yuga progresses, our life span gets shorter and shorter. Our forefathers lived for a hundred years or more, but now people are dying at the age of sixty or seventy. Gradually the life span will decrease even further. Memory, mercy, and other good qualities will also decrease in this age.

In Kali-yuga, people are not serious about self-realization even by simple, practical means, and what to speak of this difficult yoga system, which regulates the mode of living, the manner of sitting, selection of place, and detachment of the mind from material engagements. As a practical man, Arjuna thought it was impossible to follow this system of yoga, even though he was favorably endowed in many ways. He was not prepared to become a pseudo yogi and practice some gymnastic feats. He was not a pretender but a soldier and a family man. Therefore he frankly admitted that for him this system of yoga would be a waste of time. Arjuna belonged to the royal family and was highly elevated in terms of numerous qualities; he was a great warrior, he had great longevity, and, above all, he was the most intimate friend of Lord Krsna, the Supreme Personality of Godhead. Five thousand years ago, when Arjuna was living, the life span was very long. At that time, people used to live up to one thousand years. In the present age of Kali-yuga, the life span is limited to a hundred years; in Dvâpara-yuga, the life span was a thousand years; in Treta-yuga, the life span was ten thousand years; and in Satya-yuga, the life span was one hundred thousand years. Thus as the yugas degenerate, the life span decreases. Even though Arjuna was living at a time when one would live and practice meditation for a thousand years, he still considered this system impossible.

Five thousand years ago, Arjuna had much better facilities than we do now, yet he refused to accept this system of yoga. In fact, we do not find any record in history of his practicing it at any time. Therefore, this system must be considered generally impossible in this age of Kali. Of course, it may be possible for some very few, rare men, but for the people in general it is an impossible proposal. If this were so five thousand years ago, what of the present day? Those who are imitating this yoga system in different so-called schools and societies, although complacent, are certainly wasting their time. They are completely ignorant of the desired goal.

Since this ashtânga-yoga system is considered impossible, the bhakti-yoga system is recommended for everyone. Without training or education, one can automatically participate in bhakti-yoga. Even a small child can clap at kirtana. Therefore Lord Caitanya Mahâprabhu has proclaimed bhakti-yoga the only system practical for this age.

\[ \text{harer náma harer náma} \\
\text{kalau násty eva násty eva} \\
\text{násty eva gatir anyathâ} \]

"In this age of quarrel and hypocrisy the only means of deliverance is chanting the holy name of the Lord. There is no
other way. There is no other way. There is no other way.” Chanting is very simple, and one will feel the results immediately. Pratyaksāvagamaṁ dharmanyam. If we attempt to practice other yoga systems, we will remain in darkness; we will not know whether or not we are making progress. In bhakti-yoga, one can understand, “Yes, now I am making progress.” This is the only yoga system by which one can quickly attain self-realization and liberation in this life. One doesn’t have to wait for another lifetime.

caṇcalāṁ hi manah kṛṣṇa
pramāṭhi balavad drdham
tasyāham nirgraḥam manye
vāyor iva suduṣkaram

“For the mind is restless, turbulent, obstinate, and very strong, O Kṛṣṇa, and to subdue it is, it seems to me, more difficult than controlling the wind.” (Bg. 6.34) By chanting Hare Kṛṣṇa, one captures the mind immediately. Just by saying the name Kṛṣṇa and hearing it, the mind is automatically fixed on Kṛṣṇa. This means that the yoga system is immediately attained. The entire yoga system aims at concentration on the form of Viṣṇu, and Kṛṣṇa is the original personality from whom all these Viṣṇu forms are expanded. Kṛṣṇa is like the original candle from which all other candles are lit. If one candle is lit, one can light any number of candles, and there is no doubt that each candle is as powerful as the original candle. Nonetheless, one has to recognize the original candle as the original. Similarly, from Kṛṣṇa millions of Viṣṇu forms expand, and each Viṣṇu form is as good as Kṛṣṇa, but Kṛṣṇa remains the original. Thus one who concentrates his mind on Lord Śri Kṛṣṇa, the original Supreme Personality of Godhead, immediately attains the perfection of yoga.

śrī-bhagavān uvāca
asamśayaṁ mahā-bāho
mano durnigrāhāṁ calam
abhāvāsena tu kaunteya
vairāgyaṁ ca grhyate

“The Blessed Lord said: O mighty-armed son of Kunti, it is undoubtedly very difficult to curb the restless mind, but it is possible by constant practice and by detachment.” (Bg. 6.35) Kṛṣṇa does not say that it is not difficult. Rather, He admits that it is difficult, but possible by means of constant practice. Constant practice means engaging ourselves in some activities that remind us of Kṛṣṇa. In this Society for Kṛṣṇa consciousness we therefore have many activities—kirtana, temple activities, prasāda, publications, and so on. Everyone is engaged in some activity with Kṛṣṇa at the center. Therefore whether one is typing for Kṛṣṇa, cooking for Kṛṣṇa, chanting for Kṛṣṇa, or distributing literature for Kṛṣṇa, he is in the yoga system, and he is also in Kṛṣṇa. We engage in activities just as in material life, but these activities are molded in such a way that they are directly connected with Kṛṣṇa. Thus through every activity, Kṛṣṇa consciousness is possible, and perfection in yoga follows automatically.

asaṁyataṁ manāḥ yogyo
duṣṭṝpya iti me maṁīḥ
vaśyataṁ tu yatātā
śakyo vāpтурum upāyataḥ

“For one whose mind is unbridled, self-realization is difficult work. But he whose mind is controlled and who strives by right means is assured of success. That is My opinion.” (Bg. 6.36) The Supreme Personality of Godhead declares that one who does not accept the proper treatment to detach the mind from material engagement can hardly achieve success in self-realization. Trying to practice yoga while engaging the mind in material enjoyment is like trying to ignite a fire while pouring water on it. Similarly, yoga practice without mental control is a waste of time. I may sit down to meditate and focus my mind on Kṛṣṇa, and that is very commendable, but there are many yoga societies that teach their students to concentrate on the void or on some color. That is, they do not recommend concentration on the form of Viṣṇu. Trying to concentrate the mind on the impersonal or the void is very difficult and troublesome. It is stated by Śrī Kṛṣṇa in the Twelfth Chapter of Bhagavad-gītā (12.5),
kleśo 'dhikataras teśām
avyaktāsakta-cetasām
avyaktā hi gaitir duḥkhaṁ
dehavadbhir avāpyate

"For those whose minds are attached to the unmanifested, impersonal feature of the Supreme, advancement is very troublesome. To make progress in that discipline is always difficult for those who are embodied."

In the temple, the devotee tries to concentrate on the form of Kṛṣṇa. Concentrating on nothingness, on void, is very difficult, and naturally the mind is very flickering. Therefore instead of concentrating on the void, the mind searches out something else. The mind must be engaged in thinking of something, and if it is not thinking of Kṛṣṇa, it must be thinking of māyā. Therefore, pseudomeditation on the impersonal void is simply a waste of time. Such a show of yoga practice may be materially lucrative, but useless as far as spiritual realization is concerned. I may open a class in yogic meditation and charge people money for sitting down and pressing their nose this way and that, but if my students do not attain the real goal of yoga practice, they have wasted their time and money, and I have cheated them.

Therefore one has to concentrate his mind steadily and constantly on the form of Viṣṇu, and that is called samādhi. In Kṛṣṇa consciousness, the mind is controlled by engaging it constantly in the transcendental loving service of the Lord. Unless one is engaged in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, he cannot steadily control the mind. A Kṛṣṇa conscious person easily achieves the result of yoga practice without separate endeavor, but a yoga practitioner cannot achieve success without becoming Kṛṣṇa conscious.

CHAPTER EIGHT

Failure and Success in Yoga

Suppose I give up my business, my ordinary occupation, and begin to practice yoga, real yoga, as explained herein by Lord Śrī Kṛṣṇa. Suppose I practice, and somehow or other I fail; I cannot properly complete the process. What, then, is the result? This is Arjuna's very next question.

arjuna uvāca
ayatiḥ śraddhayopeta
yogāc kalita-mānasah
aprāpya yoga-samsiddhiṁ
kāṁ gatiṁ kṛṣṇa gacchati

"Arjuna said: What is the destination of the man of faith who does not persever e, who in the beginning takes to the process of self-realization but who later desists due to worldly-mindedness and thus does not attain perfection in mysticism?" (Bg. 6.37)

The path of self-realization, of mysticism, is described in the Bhagavad-gītā. The basic principle of self-realization is knowing that "I am not this material body but am different from it, and my happiness is in eternal life, bliss, and knowledge." Before arriving at the point of self-realization, one must take it for granted that he is not this body. That lesson is taught in the very beginning of Bhagavad-gītā: the living entity is not this material body but something different, and his happiness is in eternal life.

Clearly, this life is not eternal. The perfection of yoga means attaining a blissful, eternal life full of knowledge. All yoga systems
should be executed with that goal in mind. It is not that one attends yoga classes to reduce fat or to keep the body fit for sense gratification. This is not the goal of yoga, but people are taught this way because they want to be cheated. Actually, if you undergo any exercise program, your body will be kept fit. There are many systems of bodily exercise—weight lifting and other sports—and they help keep the body fit, reduce fat, and help the digestive system. Therefore there is no need to practice yoga for these purposes. The real purpose for practicing yoga is to realize that I am not this body. I want eternal happiness, complete knowledge, and eternal life—that is the ultimate end of the true yoga system.

The goal of yoga is transcendental, beyond both body and mind. Self-realization is sought by three methods: (1) the path of knowledge (jñāna); (2) the path of the eightfold system; or (3) the path of bhakti-yoga. In each of these processes, one has to realize the constitutional position of the living entity, his relationship with God, and the activities whereby he can reestablish the lost link and achieve the highest perfectional stage of Kṛṣṇa consciousness. Following any of the above-mentioned three methods, one is sure to reach the supreme goal sooner or later. This was asserted by the Lord in the Second Chapter: even a little endeavor on the transcendental path offers a great hope for deliverance.

Of these three methods, the path of bhakti-yoga is especially suitable for this age, because it is the most direct method of God realization. To be doubly assured, Arjuna is asking Lord Kṛṣṇa to confirm His former statement. One may sincerely accept the path of self-realization, but the process of cultivation of knowledge (jñāna) and the practice of the eightfold yoga system are generally very difficult for this age. Therefore, despite constant endeavor, one may fail for many reasons. First of all, one may not be actually following the process, the rules and regulations. To pursue the transcendental path is more or less to declare war on the illusory energy. When we accept any process of self-realization, we are actually declaring war against māyā, illusion, and māyā is certain to place many difficulties before us. Therefore, there is a chance of failure, but one has to become very steady. Whenever a person tries to escape the clutches of the illusory energy, she tries to defeat the practitioner by various allurements. A conditioned soul is already allured by the modes of material energy, and there is every chance of being allured again, even while performing transcendental disciplines. This is called yogāc cañita-mānasah: deviation from the transcendental path. Arjuna is inquisitive to know the results of deviation from the path of self-realization.

As stated in Bhagavad-gītā (6.37), quoted above, yogāt means "from the practice of yoga," cañita means "diversion," and mānasah means "mind." So there is every chance for the mind to be diverted from yoga practice. We all have some experience of trying to concentrate by reading a book, and our mind is so disturbed that it does not allow us to concentrate on the book.

Actually, Arjuna is asking a very important question, for one is subject to failure in all types of yoga—be it the eightfold yoga system, the jñāna-yoga system of speculative philosophy, or the bhakti-yoga system of devotional service. Failure is possible on any of these paths, and the results of failure are clearly explained by Śrī Kṛṣṇa Himself in the following dialogue with Arjuna (Bg. 6.38-44). Arjuna, continuing his inquiry, asks,

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{kaccin nobhaya-vibṛṣṭaś} \\
\text{chinnābhram iva na śyati} \\
\text{apraśīṣṭho mahā-bāho} \\
\text{vimūḍho brahmaṇaḥ pathi}
\end{align*}
\]

"O mighty-armed Kṛṣṇa, does not such a man, being deviated from the path of Transcendence, perish like a riven cloud, with no position in any sphere?"

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{etan me saṁśayaṁ kṛṣṇa} \\
\text{chettum arhasya aśeṣatah} \\
\text{tvad-anṛḥaḥ saṁśayasyāsya} \\
\text{chettā na hy upapadyate}
\end{align*}
\]

"This is my doubt, O Kṛṣṇa, and I ask You to dispel it completely. But for Yourself, no one is to be found who can destroy this doubt."
The Blessed Lord said: Son of Prtha, a transcendentalist engaged in auspicious activities does not meet with destruction either in this world or in the spiritual world; one who does good, My friend, is never overcome by evil.

The unsuccessful yogi, after many, many years of enjoyment on the planets of the pious living entities, is born into a family of righteous people, or into a family of rich aristocracy.

Or he takes his birth in a family of transcendentalists who are surely great in wisdom. Verily, such a birth is rare in this world.

On taking such a birth, he again revives the divine consciousness of his previous life, and he tries to make further progress in order to achieve complete success, O son of Kuru.

“By virtue of the divine consciousness of his previous life, he automatically becomes attracted to the yogic principles—even without seeking them. Such an inquisitive transcendentalist, striving for yoga, stands always above the ritualistic principles of the scriptures.”

Purification of consciousness is the purpose of this Krishna consciousness movement. Presently we are preparing this divine consciousness, for our consciousness goes with us at the time of death. Consciousness is carried from the body just as the aroma of a flower is carried by the air. When we die, this material body composed of five elements—earth, water, air, fire, and ether—decomposes, and the gross materials return to the elements. Or, as the Christian Bible says, “Dust thou art, and unto dust thou shalt return.” In some societies the body is burned, in others it is buried, and in others it is thrown to animals. In India, the Hindus burn the body, and thus the body is transformed into ashes. Ash is simply another form of earth. Christians bury the body, and after some time in the grave, the body eventually turns to dust, which again, like ash, is another form of earth. There are other societies—like the Parsee community in India—that neither burn nor bury the body but throw it to the vultures, and the vultures immediately come to eat the body, and then the body is eventually transformed into stool. So in any case, this beautiful body, which we are soaping and caring for so nicely, will eventually turn into either stool, ashes, or dust.

At death, the finer elements (mind, intelligence, and ego), which, combined, are called consciousness, carry the small particle of spirit soul to another body to suffer or enjoy, according to one’s work. Our consciousness is molded by our work. If we associate with stool, our consciousness, which is like the air, will carry the aroma of stool, and thus at the time of death will
Failure and Success in Yoga

progress is a question of practice. When a child is born, he neither knows how to smoke nor how to drink, but through association he becomes a drunkard or a smoker. Association is the most important factor. Saṅgāt saṅjñaye kāmāh. For instance, there are many business associations, and by becoming a member of certain associations, one's business flourishes. In any endeavor, association is very important. For the development of divine consciousness, we have established the International Society for Krishna Consciousness, in which the methods of attaining divine consciousness are taught. In this society we invite everyone to come and chant Hare Kṛṣṇa. This process is not difficult, and even children can participate. No previous qualifications are necessary; one doesn't need a master's degree or doctorate. Our invitation to everyone is to join this association and become Kṛṣṇa conscious.

The Supreme Lord, God, is pure, and His kingdom is also pure. If one wants to enter His kingdom, he must also be pure. This is very natural; if we want to enter a particular society, we must meet certain qualifications. If we want to return home, back to Godhead, there is a qualification we must meet—we must not be materially contaminated. And what is this contamination? Unrestricted sense gratification. If we can free ourselves from the material contamination of sense gratification, we can become eligible to enter the kingdom of God. That process of freeing ourselves, of washing ourselves of this contamination, is called the yoga system. As stated before, yoga does not mean sitting down for fifteen minutes, meditating, and then continuing with sense gratification. To be cured of a certain disease, we must follow the prescriptions of a physician. In this Sixth Chapter of Bhagavad-gītā, the process of yoga is recommended, and we have to follow the prescribed methods in order to be freed from material contamination. If we succeed in doing so, we can link up, or connect, with the Supreme.

Kṛṣṇa consciousness is a method for connecting directly with the Supreme. This is the special gift of Lord Caitanya Mahā-prabhu. Not only is this method direct and immediate, but it is also practical. Although many people entering this Society have no qualifications, they have become highly advanced in Kṛṣṇa consciousness. 

This can be easily done through association (saṅgāt saṅjñaye kāmāh). Through divine association, our consciousness is made divine, and through demonic association, our consciousness is made demonic. Therefore, our consciousness must be trained to be divine through the proper association of those in Kṛṣṇa consciousness. That is the duty of one in this human form, a form that gives us a chance to make our next life completely divine. To attain this end, we should try to contact those who are developing divine consciousness.

pratītya prabhu bhaktyā
dyumandāś ca
tato yāti parāṁ gatim

"But when the yogī engages himself with sincere endeavor in making further progress, being washed of all contaminations, then ultimately, after many, many births of practice, he attains the supreme goal.” (Bg. 6.45) As indicated in this verse, making
consciousness simply by coming in contact with the Society. In this age, life is very short, and a yoga process that takes a long time will not help the general populace. In Kali-yuga, people are all so unfortunate, and association is very bad. Therefore, this process of directly contacting the Supreme is recommended—hari-nama. Kṛṣṇa is present in the form of His transcendental name, and we can contact Him immediately by hearing His name. Simply by hearing the name Kṛṣṇa we immediately become freed from material contamination.

As stated in the Seventh Chapter of Bhagavad-gītā (7.28),

\[
yeṣāṁ tv anta-gataṁ pāparṁ
janāṁṁ puṇya-karmaṇāṁ
te dvandva-moha-nīrmuktā
bhajante māṁ drḍha-vraṭāḥ
\]

“Persons who have acted piously in previous lives and in this life, whose sinful actions are completely eradicated, and who are freed from the duality of delusion, engage themselves in My service with determination.” It is herein stressed that one must be completely fixed in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, devoid of duality, and must execute only pious activities. Because the mind is flickering, dualities will always come. One is always wondering, “Shall I become Kṛṣṇa conscious, or should I engage in another consciousness?” These problems are always there, but if one is advanced by virtue of pious activities executed in a previous life, his consciousness will be steadily fixed, and he will resolve, “I will be Kṛṣṇa conscious.”

Whether we acted piously in this life or a previous life really doesn’t matter. This chanting of Hare Kṛṣṇa is so potent that through it we will immediately be purified. We should have the determination, however, not to become implicated in further impious activities. Therefore, for those who want to be initiated in this Society for Kṛṣṇa consciousness, there are four principles: no illicit sex, no intoxication, no meat-eating, and no gambling. We don’t say, “No sex.” But we do say, “No illicit sex.” If you want sex, get married and have Kṛṣṇa conscious children. “No intoxication” means not even taking tea or coffee—to say nothing of other intoxicants. And there is no gambling and no meat-eating (including fish and eggs). Simply by following these four basic rules and regulations, one becomes immediately uncontaminated. No further endeavor is necessary. As soon as one joins this Kṛṣṇa consciousness movement and follows these rules and regulations, material contamination is immediately removed, but one must be careful not to be contaminated again. Therefore these rules and regulations should be followed carefully.

Material contamination begins with these four bad habits, and if we manage to check them, there is no question of contamination. Therefore, as soon as we take to Kṛṣṇa consciousness, we become free. However, we should not think that because Kṛṣṇa consciousness makes us free, we can again indulge in these four bad habits and get free by chanting. That is cheating, and that will not be allowed. Once we are freed, we should not allow ourselves to become contaminated again. One should not think, “I shall drink or have illicit sex and then chant and make myself free.” According to some religious processes, it is said that one can commit all kinds of sin and then go to church, confess to a priest, and be freed of all sin. Therefore people are sinning and confessing and sinning and confessing over and over again. But this is not the process of Kṛṣṇa consciousness. If you are freed, that’s all right, but don’t do it again. After all, what is the purpose of confession? If you confess, “I have committed these sinful activities,” why should you commit them again? If a thief confesses that he has been pickpocketing, he is freed of his sin by virtue of his confession, but does this mean that he should go out again and pick pockets? This requires a little intelligence. One should not think that because by confessing one becomes freed, he should continue to commit sinful activities, confess again, and again become freed. That is not the purpose of confession.

We should therefore understand that if we indulge in unrestricted sinful activities, we become contaminated. We should be careful to have sex only according to the rules and regulations, to eat only food that has been prescribed and properly offered, to defend as Kṛṣṇa advised Arjuna—for the right cause.
THE PATH OF PERFECTION

In this way we can avoid contamination and purify our life. If we can continue to live a pure life until the time of death, we will surely be transferred to the kingdom of God. When one is fully in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, he does not return to this material world when he gives up his body. This is stated in the Fourth Chapter (Bg. 4.9):

janma karma ca me divyam
evain yo vetti taivatāh
tyaktvā deham puran janma
naiti mām eti so 'rjuna

“One who knows the transcendental nature of My appearance and activities does not, upon leaving the body, take his birth again in this material world, but attains My eternal abode, O Arjuna.”

The unsuccessful yogī returns to a good family or to a righteous, rich, or aristocratic family, but if one is situated in perfect Kṛṣṇa consciousness, he does not return again. He attains Goloka Vṛndāvana in the eternal spiritual sky. We should be determined not to come back to this material world again, because even if we attain a good birth in a rich or aristocratic family, we can degrade ourselves again by improperly utilizing our good chance. Why take this risk? It is better to complete the process of Kṛṣṇa consciousness in this life. It is very simple and not at all difficult. We only have to keep thinking of Kṛṣṇa; then we will be assured that our next birth will be in the spiritual sky, in Goloka Vṛndāvana, in the kingdom of God.

tapasvībhya 'dhiko yogī
jñānibhyo 'pi mato 'dhikāḥ
karmibhyās cādhihiko yogī
tasmād yogī bhavārjuna

“A yogī is greater than the ascetic, greater than the empiricist, and greater than the fruitive worker. Therefore, O Arjuna, in all circumstances, be a yogī.” (Bg. 6.46) There are different gradations of life within this material world, but if one lives according to the yogic principle, especially the principles of bhakti-yoga, one is living the most perfect life possible. Therefore Kṛṣṇa is telling Arjuna, “My dear friend Arjuna, in all circumstances be a yogī and remain a yogī.”

yogināṁ api sarveśāṁ
mad-gatenaṁ tārātamanā
śraddhāvān bhajate yo māṁ
sa me yuktatamo mataḥ

“And of all yogīs, he who always abides in Me with great faith, worshipping Me in transcendental loving service, is most intimately united with Me in yoga and is the highest of all.” (Bg. 6.47) Here it is clearly stated that there are many types of yogīs—āstāṅga-yogīs, hātha-yogīs, jñāna-yogīs, karma-yogīs, and bhakti-yogīs—and that of all the yogīs, “he who always abides in Me” is said to be the greatest of all. “In Me” means in Kṛṣṇa; that is, the greatest yogī is always in Kṛṣṇa consciousness. Such a yogī “abides in Me with great faith, worshipping Me in transcendental loving service, is most intimately united with Me in yoga, and is the highest of all.” This is the prime instruction of this Sixth Chapter on sāṅkhya-yoga: if one wants to attain the highest platform of yoga, one must remain in Kṛṣṇa consciousness.

In Sanskrit, the word bhajate, with its root bhaj (bhaj-dhātu) means “to render service.” But who renders service to Kṛṣṇa unless he is a devotee of Kṛṣṇa? In this Society of Kṛṣṇa consciousness, devotees are rendering service without payment, out of love for Kṛṣṇa. They can render service elsewhere and get paid hundreds of dollars a month, but this service rendered here is loving service (bhaj), based on love of Godhead. Devotees render service in many ways—gardening, typing, cooking, cleaning, etc. All activities are connected with Kṛṣṇa, and therefore Kṛṣṇa consciousness is prevailing twenty-four hours a day. That is the highest type of yoga. That is “worshiping Me in transcendental loving service.” As stated before, the perfection of yoga is keeping one’s consciousness in contact with Viṣṇu, or Kṛṣṇa, the Supreme Lord. We are not simply boasting that even a child can be the highest
simply by participating in Krṣṇa consciousness; no, this is the verdict of authorized scripture— Bhagavad-gītā. These words are not our creation but are specifically stated by Lord Śrī Krṣṇa, the Supreme Personality of Godhead Himself.

Actually, worship and service are somewhat different. Worship implies some motive. I worship a friend or an important man because if I can please that person, I may derive some profit. Those who worship the demigods worship for some ulterior purpose, and that is condemned in the Seventh Chapter of Bhagavad-gītā (7.20):

\[ \text{kāma\text{\textquotesingle}s tais tair hṛta-jīnānāḥ} \\
\text{prapadyante 'nya-devatāḥ} \\
\text{tair tair niyamam āsthiāya} \\
\text{prakṛtyā niyatāḥ svayaā} \]

“Those whose minds are distorted by material desires surrender unto demigods and follow the particular rules and regulations of worship according to their own natures.” Those who are bewildered by lust worship the demigods with a motive; therefore, when we speak of worship, some motive is implied. Service, however, is different, for in service there is no motive. Service is rendered out of love, just as a mother renders service to her child out of love only. Everyone can neglect that child, but the mother cannot, because love is present. Bhaj-dhātu is similar in that there is no question of motive, but service is rendered out of pure love. That is the perfection of Krṣṇa consciousness.

This is also the recommendation of Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam (1.2.6):

\[ \text{sa vai puṁsāṁ paro dharmo} \\
\text{yato bhaktir adhokṣaje} \\
\text{ahaituky apratihatā} \\
\text{yayātmā suprasidati} \]

“The supreme occupation [dharma] for all humanity is that by which men can attain to loving devotional service unto the transcendent Lord. Such devotional service must be unmotivated and uninterrupted to completely satisfy the self.” Yato bhaktir adhokṣaje. The word bhakti comes from the same root as bhaj. The test of a first-class religion is whether or not we are developing our love for God. If we practice religion with some ulterior motive, hoping to fulfill our material necessities, our religion is not first class but third class. It must be understood that first-class religion is that by which we can develop our love of Godhead. Ahaituky apratihatā. This perfect religion should be executed without ulterior motive or impediment. That is the yoga system recommended in Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam and in this Sixth Chapter of Bhagavad-gītā. That is the system of Krṣṇa consciousness.

Krṣṇa consciousness is not rendered with some motive in mind. The devotees are not serving Krṣṇa in order that He supply them this or that. For a devotee there is no scarcity. One should not think that by becoming Krṣṇa conscious, one becomes poor. No. If Krṣṇa is there, everything is there, because Krṣṇa is everything. But this does not mean that we should try to conduct business with Krṣṇa, demanding, “Krṣṇa give me this. Give me that.” Krṣṇa knows better than we do, and He knows our motives. A child does not make demands of his parents, saying, “Dear father, give me this. Give me that.” Since the father knows his child’s necessities, there is no need for the child to ask. Similarly, it is not a very good idea to ask God to give us this or that. Why should we ask? If God is all-knowing and all-powerful, He knows our wants, our necessities, and can supply them. This is confirmed in the Vedas. Eko bahūntam yo vidadhāti kāmān: “The single one almighty God is supplying all necessities to millions and trillions of living entities.” Therefore, we should not demand anything of God, because our demands are already met. The supplies are already there. We should simply try to love God. Even cats and dogs are receiving their necessities without going to church and petitioning God. If a cat or dog receives its necessities without making demands, why should the devotee not receive what he needs? Therefore we should not demand anything from God but should simply try to love Him. Then everything will be fulfilled, and we will have attained the highest platform of yoga.
We can actually see how the various parts of the body serve the body. If I have an itch, the fingers immediately scratch. If I want to see something, the eyes immediately look. If I want to go somewhere, the legs immediately take me. As I receive service from the different parts of my body, God receives service from all parts of His creation. God is not meant to serve. If the limbs of the body serve the entire body, the parts of the body automatically receive energy. Similarly, if we serve Kṛṣṇa, we automatically receive all necessities, all energy.

Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam confirms that we are all parts and parcels of the Supreme. If a part of the body cannot regularly render service, it gives pain to the body, and if a person does not render service to the Supreme Lord, he is simply giving pain and trouble to the Supreme Lord. Therefore such a person has to suffer, just as a criminal has to suffer when he does not abide by the laws of the state. Such a criminal may think, “I’m a very good man,” but because he is violating the laws of the state, he is giving the government trouble, and consequently the government puts him in prison. When living entities give the Supreme Lord trouble, the Lord comes, collects them together, and puts them in this material world. In essence, He says, “You live here. You are all disturbing the creation; therefore you are criminals and have to live in this material world.”

The word avajananti actually means “to neglect.” This means thinking, “What is God? I am God. Why should I serve God?” This is just like a criminal thinking, “What is this government? I can manage my own affairs. I don’t care for the government.” This is called avajananti. We may speak in this way, but the police department is there to punish us. Similarly, material nature is here to punish us with the threefold miseries. These miseries are meant for those rascals who avajananti, who don’t care for God or who take the meaning of God cheaply, saying, “I am God. You are God.”

Thus the general progress of yoga is gradual. First one practices karma-yoga, which refers to ordinary, fruitive activity. Ordinary activities include sinful activities, but karma-yoga excludes such activities. Karma-yoga refers only to good, pious activities, or those actions which are prescribed. After performing karma-yoga, one comes to the platform of jñāna-yoga, knowledge. From the platform of knowledge, one attains to this aṣṭāṅga-yoga, the eightfold yoga system—dhyāna, dhāraṇā, prāṇāyāma, āsana, etc.—and from aṣṭāṅga-yoga, as one concentrates on Viṣṇu, one comes to the point of bhakti-yoga. Bhakti-yoga is the perfectional stage, and if one practices Kṛṣṇa consciousness, one attains this stage from the very beginning. That is the direct route.

If one practices jñāna-yoga and thinks that he has attained the ultimate, he is mistaken. He has to make further progress. If we are on a staircase and have to reach the top floor, which is the hundredth floor, we are mistaken if we think we have arrived when we are on the thirtieth floor. As stated before, the whole yoga system may be likened to a staircase, connecting or linking us to God. In order to attain the ultimate, the Supreme Personality of Godhead, we must go to the highest platform, and that is bhakti-yoga.

But why walk up all these steps if we have a chance to take an elevator? By means of an elevator, we can reach the top in a matter of seconds. Bhakti-yoga is this elevator, the direct process by which we can reach the top in a matter of seconds. We can go step by step, following all the other yoga systems, or we can go directly. Since in this age of Kali-yuga people have short life spans and are always disturbed and anxious, Lord Caitanya Mahāprabhu, by His
causeless mercy, has given us the elevator by which we can come immediately to the platform of bhakti-yoga. That direct means is the chanting of Hare Kṛṣṇa, and that is the special gift of Lord Caitanya Mahāprabhu. Therefore Rūpa Gosvāmī offers respects to Lord Caitanya Mahāprabhu, namo maha-vadānīya kṛṣṇa-prema-pradāya te: "Oh, You are the most munificent incarnation because You are directly giving love of Kṛṣṇa. To attain pure love of Kṛṣṇa, one has to pass through so many stages of yoga, but You are giving this love directly. Therefore You are the most munificent."

As stated in the Eighteenth Chapter of Bhagavad-gītā (18.55),

bhaktyā mām abhijānātī
yāvān yaś cāsmy tattvataḥ
tato mām tattvato jītvā
vīṣate tad-anantaram

“One can understand the Supreme Personality as He is only by devotional service. And when one is in full consciousness of the Supreme Lord by such devotion, he can enter into the kingdom of God.” In the other yoga systems, there must be a mixture of bhakti, but bhakti-yoga is unadulterated devotion. It is service without a motive. Generally people pray with some motive in mind, but we should pray only for further engagement in devotional service. Lord Caitanya Mahāprabhu has taught us that when we pray we should not pray for anything material. In the beginning, we cited Lord Caitanya Mahāprabhu’s perfect prayer:

na dhanāṁ na janaṁ na sundarāṁ
kavitāṁ vā jagad-īśa kāmaye
mama janmani janmaniśvare
bhavatād bhaktir āhityukī tvayi

“O Almighty Lord, I have no desire to accumulate wealth, nor to enjoy beautiful women. Nor do I want any number of followers. What I want only is the causeless mercy of Your devotional service in my life, birth after birth.” (Śiśuṣṭaka 4) In this verse, Caitanya Mahāprabhu addresses the Supreme Lord as Jagadīśa. Jagat means “universe,” and īśa means “controller.” The Supreme Lord is the controller of the universe, and this can be understood by anyone; therefore Caitanya Mahāprabhu addresses the Supreme Lord as Jagadīśa instead of Kṛṣṇa or Rāma. In the material world we find many controllers, so it is logical that there is a controller of the entire universe. Caitanya Mahāprabhu does not pray for wealth, followers, or beautiful women, because these are material requests. Usually, people want to be very great leaders within this material world. Someone tries to become a very rich man like Ford or Rockefeller, or someone else tries to become president or some great leader that many thousands of people will follow. These are all material demands: “Give me money. Give me followers. Give me a nice wife.” Lord Caitanya Mahāprabhu refuses to make such materialistic requests. He frankly says, “I don’t want any of these things.” He even says, mama janmani janmaniśvare. That is, He’s not even asking for liberation. Just as the materialists have their demands, the yogīs demand liberation. But Caitanya Mahāprabhu does not want anything of this nature. Then why is He a devotee? Why is He worshiping Kṛṣṇa? “I simply want to engage in Your service birth after birth.” He does not even pray for an end to birth, old age, disease, and death. There are no demands whatsoever, for this is the highest platform, the stage of bhakti-yoga.

Chanting Hare Kṛṣṇa is also asking the Lord, “Please engage me in Your service.” This is the mantra taught by Caitanya Mahāprabhu Himself. Hare refers to the energy of the Lord, and Kṛṣṇa and Rāma are names for the Lord Himself. When we chant Hare Kṛṣṇa, we are asking Kṛṣṇa to please engage us in His service. This is because our entire material disease is due to our having forgotten to serve God. In illusion, we are thinking, “I am God. What is the other God that I have to serve? I myself am God.” Ultimately, that is the only disease, the last snare of illusion. First of all, a person tries to be prime minister, president, Rockefeller, Ford, this and that, and when one fails or attains such a post and is still unhappy, he wants to become God. That is like becoming an even higher president. When I understand that the presidency
does not afford me eternal bliss and knowledge, I demand the highest presidency. In any case, the demand is there, and this demand is our disease. In illusion, we are demanding to be the highest, but the process of bhakti-yoga is just the opposite. We want to become servants, servants of the servants of the Lord. There is no question of demanding to become the Lord; we just want to serve. That’s all.

Our original nature is rooted in service, and wanting to serve is the crucial test for the devotee. We may not realize it, but in this material world we are also serving. If we want to become president, we have to make so many promises to the voters. In other words, the president has to say, “I’ll give the people my service.” Unless he promises to serve his country, there is no question of his becoming president. So even if one is the most exalted leader, his position is to render service. This is very difficult for people to understand. Despite becoming the highest executive in the land, one has to give service to the people. If that service is not given, one is likely to be usurped, fired, or killed. In the material world, service is very dangerous. If there is a little discrepancy in one’s service, one is immediately fired. When the people did not like the service that President Nixon was rendering, they forced him to resign. Similarly, in India, Gandhi was also killed because some people did not like the way he was rendering service. This is always the position in the material world; therefore one should be intelligent enough to decide to cease rendering service for material motives. We must render service to the Supreme Lord, and that rendering of service is our perfection.

We have formed this International Society for Krishna Consciousness in order to teach people what they have forgotten. In this material world, we have forgotten the service of Rādhā-Kṛṣṇa; therefore we have become servants of māyā, the senses. Therefore, in this Society we are saying, “You are serving your senses. Now just turn your service to Rādhā and Kṛṣṇa, and you will be happy. You have to render service—either to māyā [illusion], the senses, or to Śrī Śrī Rādhā-Kṛṣṇa.”

In this world, everyone is serving the senses, but people are not satisfied. No one can be satisfied, because the senses are always demanding more gratification, and this means that we are constantly having to serve the senses. In any case, our position as servant remains the same. It is a question of whether we want to be happy in our service. It is the verdict of Bhagavad-gītā and the other Vedic scriptures that we will never be happy trying to serve our senses, for they are only sources of misery. Therefore Lord Caitanya Mahāprabhu prays to be situated in Kṛṣṇa’s service. He also prays,

\begin{equation}
\text{ayi nanda-tanuja kiñkaraṁ} \\
\text{patitaṁ māṁ viśame bhavāmbudhau} \\
\text{kṛpayā tava pāda-paṅkaja-sthita-dhūli-sadṛśaṁ vicintaya}
\end{equation}

“O son of Mahārāja Nanda [Kṛṣṇa], I am Your eternal servitor, yet somehow or other I have fallen into the ocean of birth and death. Please pick me up from this ocean of death and place me as one of the atoms at Your lotus feet.” (Śīkṣāstaka 5) This is another way of asking Kṛṣṇa to engage us in His service.

Loving devotional service can only be rendered to the personal form of Kṛṣṇa, Śyāmasundara. The impersonalists emphasize the viṣva-rūpa, the universal form exhibited in the Eleventh Chapter of Bhagavad-gītā, but it is stated therein (11.21) that the demigods are very much afraid of this form, and Arjuna says,

\begin{equation}
\text{adrṣṭa-pūrvāṁ hrṣito 'smi drṣṭvā} \\
\text{bhayena ca prayathitāṁ mano me} \\
\text{tad eva me darśaya deva rūpaṁ} \\
\text{praśīda deveśa jagan-nivāsa}
\end{equation}

“After seeing this universal form, which I have never seen before, I am gladdened, but at the same time my mind is disturbed with fear. Therefore please bestow Your grace upon me and reveal again Your form as the Personality of Godhead [Kṛṣṇa, or Śyāmasundara], O Lord of lords, O abode of the universe.” (Bg. 11.45) There is no question of loving the viṣva-rūpa. If Kṛṣṇa comes
before you in the viśva-rūpa form, you will be so filled with fear that you will forget your love. So don't be eager like the impersonalists to see the viśva-rūpa form; just render loving service to Śyāmasundara, Kṛṣṇa.

We have more or less seen Kṛṣṇa as the viśva-rūpa during wartime in Calcutta in 1942. There was a siren, and we ran into a shelter, and the bombing began. In this way, we were seeing that viśva-rūpa, and I was thinking, "Of course, this is also just another form of Kṛṣṇa. But this is not a very lovable form." A devotee wants to love Kṛṣṇa in His original form, and this viśva-rūpa is not His original form. Being omnipotent, Kṛṣṇa can appear in any form, but His lovable form is that of Kṛṣṇa, Śyāmasundara. Although a man may be a police officer, when he is at home he is a beloved father to his son. But if he comes home firing his revolver, the son will be so frightened that he will forget that he is his beloved father. Naturally, the child loves his father when he's at home like a father, and similarly we love Kṛṣṇa as He is in His eternal abode, in the form of Śyāmasundara.

The viśva-rūpa was shown to Arjuna to warn those rascals who claim, "I am God." Arjuna asked to see the viśva-rūpa so that in the future we may have some criterion by which to test rascals who claim to be God. In other words, if someone says, "I am God," we can simply reply, "If you are God, please show me your viśva-rūpa." And we can rest assured that such rascals cannot display this form.

Of course, Arjuna was offering all respects to the viśva-rūpa form. That is a natural quality of a devotee. A devotee even respects Durga, Maya, because Maya is Kṛṣṇa's energy. If we respect Kṛṣṇa, we respect everyone, even an ant. Therefore Brahmā prays,

srṣṭi-sthiti-pralaya-sādhana-śaktir ekā
cchāyeva yasya bhuvanām bibharti durgā
icchānurūpam api yasya ca ceṣṭate sā
govindam ādi-puruṣām tām ahaṁ bhajāmi

"The external potency, Māyā, who is of the nature of the shadow of the cit [spiritual] potency, is worshiped by all people as Durgā, the creating, preserving, and destroying agency of this mundane world. I worship the primeval Lord, Govinda, in accordance with whose will Durgā conducts herself." (Brahma-samhitā 5.44) Thus when we pray to Kṛṣṇa, we pray to Durgā immediately, because Durgā is His energy. And when we pray to Durgā, we are actually praying to Kṛṣṇa, because she is working under the direction of Kṛṣṇa. When the devotee sees the activities of Māyā, he sees Kṛṣṇa immediately, thinking, "Oh, Māyā is acting so nicely under the direction of Kṛṣṇa." When one offers respect to a policeman, he is actually offering respect to the government. Durgā, the material energy, is so powerful that she can create, annihilate, and maintain, but in all cases she is acting under Kṛṣṇa's directions.

Through bhakti, pure devotion to Kṛṣṇa, we can leave the association of Māyā and be promoted to the eternal association of Kṛṣṇa. Some of the gopas, Kṛṣṇa's friends, are eternal associates, and others are promoted to that eternal position. If only the eternal associates of Kṛṣṇa can play with Him and others cannot, then what is the meaning of becoming Kṛṣṇa conscious? We can also become eternal associates of Kṛṣṇa through pious deeds executed in many, many lives. Actually, in the Vṛndāvana manifest in this material world, the associates of Kṛṣṇa are mainly conditioned living entities who have been promoted to the perfect stage of Kṛṣṇa consciousness. Thus promoted, they are first of all allowed to see Kṛṣṇa on the planet where Kṛṣṇa's pastimes are being enacted. After this, they are promoted to the transcendental Goloka Vṛndāvana in the spiritual sky. Therefore it is stated in the Bhāgavata (10.12.11), krta-puṇya-puṣijah.

Bhakti-yoga means connecting ourselves with Kṛṣṇa, God, and becoming His eternal associates. Bhakti-yoga cannot be applied to any other objective; therefore in Buddhism, for instance, there is no bhakti-yoga, because they do not recognize the Supreme Lord existing as the supreme objective. Christians, however, practice bhakti-yoga when they worship Jesus Christ, because they are accepting him as the son of God and are therefore accepting God. Unless one accepts God, there is no question of bhakti-yoga. Christianity, therefore, is also a form of Vaiṣṇavism, because God is recognized. Nonetheless, there are different stages of God realization. Mainly, Christianity says, "God is great," and that is a
very good assertion, but the actual greatness of God can be understood from Bhagavad-gītā and Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam. Accepting the greatness of God is the beginning of bhakti. Bhakti-yoga also exists among the Muhammadans, because God is the target in the Muslim religion. However, where there is no recognition of a personal God—in other words, where there is only impersonalism—there is no question of bhakti-yoga. Bhakti-yoga must include three items: the servitor, the served, and service. One must be present to accept service, and one must be present to render service. The via media is the process of service itself, bhakti-yoga. Now, if there is no one to accept that service, how is bhakti-yoga possible? Therefore, if a philosophy or religion does not accept God as the Supreme Person, there is no possibility of bhakti-yoga being applied.

In the bhakti-yoga process, the role of the spiritual master is most important and essential. Although the spiritual master will always come back until his devotees have achieved God realization, one should not try to take advantage of this. We should not trouble our spiritual master but should complete the bhakti-yoga process in this life. The disciple should be serious in his service to the spiritual master, and if the devotee is intelligent, he should think, “Why should I act in such a way that my spiritual master has to take the trouble to reclaim me again? Let me realize Kṛṣṇa in this life.” That is the proper way of thinking. We should not think, “Oh, I am sure that my spiritual master will come and save me. Therefore I will do as I please.” If we have any affection for our spiritual master, we should complete the process in this life, so that he does not have to return to reclaim us.

In this regard, there is the example of Bilvamāṅgala Thākura, who, in his previous life, was elevated almost to prema-bhakti, the highest platform of devotional service. However, since there is always a chance for a falldown, somehow or other he fell down. In his next life, he was born in a very rich brāhmaṇa family, in accordance with the principle enunciated in the Sixth Chapter of Bhagavad-gītā (6.41): sucinām śrīmātām gehe. Unfortunately, as is often the case with rich boys, he became a prostitute hunter. Yet it is said that his spiritual master instructed him through his prostitute, saying, “Oh, you are so attached to this mere flesh and bones. If you were this much attached to Kṛṣṇa, how much good you might achieve!” Immediately Bilvamāṅgala Thākura resumed his devotional service.

Although the spiritual master assumes responsibility for his disciple, we should not take advantage of this. Rather, we should try to please the spiritual master (yasya prasādād bhagavat-prasādah). We should not put our spiritual master in such a position that he has to reclaim us from a house of prostitution. But even if he has to do so, he will do it, because he assumes this responsibility when he accepts his disciple.

The bhakti-yoga process should be completed in this life, because in this life we have all the instruments necessary to become fully Kṛṣṇa conscious. We have mṛdaṅgas and cymbals and tongues with which to chant Hare Kṛṣṇa. Even if we don't have mṛdaṅgas and cymbals, we have a tongue. No one has to purchase a tongue. We also have ears with which to hear the sound that the tongue vibrates. Therefore we have all the instruments we need with us—a tongue and ears. We have only to chant Hare Kṛṣṇa and use our ears to hear this vibration, and all perfection will be there. We don’t have to become highly educated scientists or philosophers. We have only to chant and hear.

Thus we have everything complete. Pūrnam adah pūrnam idam: everything created by God is complete. This aggregate earth, for instance, is complete. There is sufficient water in the oceans, and the sun acts to evaporate this water, turn it into clouds, and drop rain on the land to produce plants. And from the mountains, pure rivers are flowing to supply water throughout the year. If we want to evaporate a few hundred gallons of water, we have to make many arrangements, but the creation is so complete that millions of tons of water are being drawn from the ocean, turned into clouds, and then sprayed all over the land and reserved on the peaks of mountains so that water will be present for the production of grains and vegetables. Thus the creation is complete because it comes from the complete, and similarly our bodies are also complete for spiritual realization. The complete machine is already with us. We have only to utilize it to vibrate the transcendental sound (śabda) of Hare Kṛṣṇa, and we will attain complete liberation from all material pangs.
CHAPTER NINE

Destination After Death

sarva-dvārāni sarīhyamya
mano hṛdi nirudhya ca
mūrdhny ādhāyātmanah prāṇam
āsthitō yoga-dhāranām

"The yogic situation is that of detachment from all sensual engagements. Closing all the doors of the senses and fixing the mind on the heart and the life air at the top of the head, one establishes himself in yoga." (Bg. 8.12)

One translation of the word yoga is "plus"—that is, just the opposite of minus. At the present moment, due to our materially contaminated consciousness, we are minus God. When we add God to our lives, when we connect with Him, life is perfected. This process has to be finished at the time of death; therefore as long as we are alive, we have to practice approaching that point of perfection so that at the time of death, when we give up this material body, we can realize the Supreme.

prayāna-kāle manasācalena
bhaktā yukto yoga-balena caiva
bhruvor madhye prāṇam āveśya samyak
sa tāṁ param puruṣam upaitī divyam

"One who, at the time of death, fixes his life air between the eyebrows and in full devotion engages himself in remembering
the Supreme Lord, will certainly attain to the Supreme Personality of Godhead." (Bg. 8.10) The words *prayāṇa-kāle* mean "at the time of death." Life is kind of a preparation for the final examination, which is death. If we pass that examination, we are transferred to the spiritual world. According to a very common Bengali proverb, "Whatever you do for perfection will be tested at the time of your death."

This process by which the yogī closes the doors of the senses is technically called *pratyāhāra*, meaning "just the opposite." Presently, our senses are engaged in seeing worldly beauty. "Just the opposite" means retracting the senses from that beauty and seeing the beauty inside. Hearing is concentrated on the *ōṁkāra* sound that is within. Similarly, all the other senses are withdrawn from external activity. The mind is then concentrated on the *vaśu-mūrti* within the heart (manah hṛdi nirudhya). The word nirudhya means "confining" the mind within the heart. When the yogī has thus withdrawn his senses and concentrated his mind, he transfers the life air to the top of the head and decides where he should go. There are innumerable planets, and beyond these planets is the spiritual world. The yogīs obtain information of these planets from the Vedic literatures, just as, before coming to the United States, I obtained information about this country from books. Since all the higher planets in the spiritual world are described in the Vedic literatures, the yogī knows everything and can transfer himself to any planet he likes. He does not need a material spaceship.

Scientists have been trying for many years to reach other planets with spaceships, but this is not the process. Maybe by this means one or two men can reach a planet, but that is not the general process. It is not possible for everyone. Generally, if one wants to transfer himself to a higher planet, he practices this *jñāna-yoga* system. Not the *bhakti-yoga* system. The system of *bhakti-yoga* is not used for attaining any material planet.

The devotees of Kṛṣṇa are not interested in any planet within this material universe, because they know that on all planets the four basic miseries exist—birth, old age, disease, and death. In the higher planets, one's life span may be much greater than on this earth, but death is ultimately there. Therefore those who are in Kṛṣṇa consciousness are not interested in material life but spiritual life, which means relief from these fourfold miseries. Those who are intelligent do not try to elevate themselves to any planet within this material world. To attain a higher planet, one has to prepare a particular type of body to enable one to live on that planet. We cannot attain these planets by artificial, materialistic means, because a suitable body is necessary to live there. We can stay within water only a short while, but fish are living there their entire lives. But the fish does not have a body suitable for living on the land. Similarly, to enter a higher planet, one has to prepare a suitable body.

In the higher planets, six of our months are equal to one of their days, and the inhabitants of these planets live ten thousand years. This is all described in the Vedic literatures. Although the life span on these planets is very long, there is ultimately death. After ten thousand years, twenty thousand years, or millions of years—it doesn't matter—death is ultimately there.

In the very beginning of *Bhagavad-gītā*, however, we learn that we are not subject to death.

\[
\text{na jāyate mriyate vā kadācin} \\
\text{nāyam bhūtvā bhavitā vā na bhūyāḥ} \\
\text{ajo nityaḥ śāśvato yam purāno} \\
\text{na hanyate hanyamāne śarire}
\]

"For the soul there is never birth nor death. Nor, having once been, does he ever cease to be. He is unborn, eternal, ever-existing, undying, and primeval. He is not slain when the body is slain." (Bg. 2.20) Kṛṣṇa thus instructs us that we are spirit soul and eternal; therefore why should we subject ourselves to birth and death? One who utilizes his intelligence can understand this. One who is situated in Kṛṣṇa consciousness is not interested in promotion to any planet where death exists; rather, being promoted to the spiritual sky, he receives a body just like God's. *Īśvaraḥ paramaḥ kṛṣṇaḥ sac-cid-ānanda-vigrahaḥ*. God's body is *sac-cid-ānanda*—eternal, full of knowledge, and full of pleasure.
Therefore Kṛṣṇa is called the reservoir of all pleasure. If, upon leaving this body, we transfer ourselves to the spiritual world—to Kṛṣṇa’s planet or any other spiritual planet—we attain a similar body full of sac-cid-ānanda.

The spirit soul is a very minute particle within the body. It cannot be seen like the external body, but it is sustaining the external body. The object of the sat-cakra system is to locate the soul at the topmost part of the head. From there, one who is perfect in dhyāna-yoga can transfer himself to a higher planet at will. That is the perfection of this type of yoga. The dhyāna-yogi is somewhat like a traveler who thinks, “Oh, let me see what the moon is like, then I will transfer myself to higher planets.” He goes from here to there in the universe, just as on earth travelers go from New York to California or Canada. But a Kṛṣṇa conscious person is not interested in such interplanetary travel within the material universe. His goal is service to Kṛṣṇa and transferral to the spiritual sky.

**om ity ekākṣaraṁ brahma**
**vyāḥaran māṁ anusmaran**
**yāḥ prayāti tyajan dehaṁ**
**sa yāti paramāṁ gatim**

“After being situated in this yoga practice and vibrating the sacred syllable om, the supreme combination of letters, if one thinks of the Supreme Personality of Godhead and quits his body, he will certainly reach the spiritual planets.” (Bg. 8.13) Om, or omkāra, is the concise form, or impersonal form, of the transcendental vibration. The dhyāna-yogi should vibrate om while remembering Kṛṣṇa, or Viṣṇu, the Supreme Personality of Godhead. The impersonal sound of Kṛṣṇa is om, but the sound Hare Kṛṣṇa contains om. Whatever the case, the entire yoga system aims at concentration on Viṣṇu. Impersonalists may imagine a form of Viṣṇu, but the personalists do not imagine; they actually see the form of the Supreme Lord. Whether one imagines or factually sees, one has to concentrate his mind on the Viṣṇu form. Here the word māṁ means “unto the Supreme Lord, Viṣṇu.” If one can remember Viṣṇu upon quitting this body, he can enter into the spiritual kingdom.

Destination After Death

One who is intelligent naturally thinks, “I am permanent and eternal. Why should I be interested in things that are not permanent?” Actually, no one wants an existence that is temporary. If we are living in an apartment and the landlord asks us to vacate, we have to do so, whether we want to leave or not. However, if we move to a better apartment, we are not sorry. It is our nature, however, to want to remain wherever we live. That is because we are permanent and want a permanent residence. Our inclination is to remain. Therefore we don’t want to die. We don’t want the miseries of birth, old age, disease, and death. These are external miseries inflicted by material nature, and they attack us like some fever. In order to extricate ourselves, we have to take certain precautions. To get rid of these miseries, it is necessary to get rid of the material body, because these miseries are inherent in material existence.

Thus by vibrating om and leaving the material body thinking of the Supreme Lord, the yogi is transferred to the spiritual world. Those who are not personalists, however, cannot enter into the spiritual planet of Lord Śrī Kṛṣṇa. They remain outside, in the brahmajyoti effulgence. Just as the sunshine is not different from the sun globe, the brahmajyoti effulgence of the Supreme Lord is not different from the Supreme Lord. The impersonalists are placed in that brahmajyoti as minute particles. We are all spiritual sparks, and the brahmajyoti is full of these spiritual sparks. In this way, the impersonalists merge into the spiritual existence; however, individuality is retained, because the spirit soul is constitutionally an individual. Because the impersonalists don’t want a personal form, they are placed and held in the impersonal brahmajyoti. There they exist just as atoms exist within the sunshine. The individual spiritual spark remains within the brahmajyoti as if homogeneous.

As living entities, we all want enjoyment. We do not simply want existence. We are constitutionally sac-cid-ānanda—eternal (sar), full of knowledge (cit), and full of bliss (ānanda). Those who enter the impersonal brahmajyoti cannot remain there eternally with the knowledge that “Now I am merged. I am now one with Brahman.” Although there is eternality and knowledge, bliss (ānanda) is lacking. Who can remain alone in a room year after
year reading some book and trying to enjoy himself? We cannot remain alone forever. Eventually we will leave that room and look for some association. It is our nature to want some recreation with others. The impersonalists, dissatisfied with the loneliness of their position in the impersonal effulgence of the Lord, therefore return again to this material world. This is stated in Śrimad-Bhāgavatam (10.2.32):

ye 'nye 'ravindākṣa vimukta-māninas
tvayy asta-bhāvād avisūddha-buddhayāḥ
āruhya kṛcchreṇa paraṁ padaṁ tataḥ
patunti adho 'nādṛṭa-yuṣmad-ānghrayaḥ

"O lotus-eyed Lord, although nondevotees who accept severe austerities and penances to achieve the highest position may think themselves liberated, their intelligence is impure. They fall down from their position of imagined superiority because they have no regard for Your lotus feet."

The impersonalists are like astronauts in search of a planet. If they cannot rest in some planet, they have to return to earth. It is herein stated in Śrimad-Bhāgavatam (anādṛṭa-yuṣmad-ānghrayaḥ) that the impersonalist must return to the material world because he has neglected to serve the Supreme Lord with love and devotion. As long as we are on this earth, we should practice to love and serve Kṛṣṇa, the Supreme Lord; then we can enter His spiritual planet. If we are not trained up in this way, we can enter the brahmajyoti as an impersonalist, but there is every risk that we will again fall down into material existence. Out of loneliness, we will search out some association and therefore return to the material world. What we actually want is the eternal association of the Supreme Lord. This is our constitutional position of eternality, knowledge, and pleasure. If we are alone, if we do not associate with the Supreme Lord, that pleasure is lacking. For want of pleasure, we feel uncomfortable. For want of pleasure, we will accept any kind of association, any kind of pleasure. Therefore, out of a kind of desperation, we will say, "All right, then let me have material pleasure again." That is the risk the impersonalists take.

In the material world, the highest pleasure is found in sex. That is but a perverted reflection of the pleasure experienced with Kṛṣṇa in the spiritual world. Unless there is sex present in the spiritual world, it cannot be reflected here. However, we should understand that here the reflection is perverted. Actual life is there in Kṛṣṇa. Kṛṣṇa is full of pleasure, and if we train ourselves to serve Him in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, it will be possible at the time of death to transfer ourselves to the spiritual world and enter into Kṛṣṇaloka, Kṛṣṇa's planet, and enjoy ourselves in the association of Kṛṣṇa, the reservoir of all pleasure.

Kṛṣṇa's planet is described in Brahma-saṁhitā (5.29) in this way:

cintāmaṇi-prakara-sadmasu kalpa-vṛkṣa-
lakṣāvṛteṣu surabhī abhipālayantam
lakṣmī-sahasra-sata-sambhrama-sevamānāṁ
govindam ādi-puruṣāṁ tam aham bhajāmi

"I worship Govinda, the primeval Lord, the first progenitor, who is tending the surabhī cows that fulfill all desires, who is surrounded by millions of purpose (wish-fulfilling) trees and abodes built with spiritual gems, and who is always served with great reverence and affection by hundreds and thousands of goddesses of fortune." In this way Kṛṣṇaloka is described. There the houses are made of touchstone (cintāmaṇi). If a small particle of touchstone touches an iron rod, that rod will immediately turn to gold. Of course, in this material world we have no experience with such a thing as touchstone, but according to Brahma-saṁhitā all the abodes in Kṛṣṇaloka are composed of touchstone. Similarly, the trees there are called desire trees (kalpa-vṛkṣa) because one can get whatever he desires from them. Here we can get only mangoes from a mango tree, but in Kṛṣṇaloka we can get whatever we desire from any tree because the trees are kalpa-vṛkṣa. This is just a partial description of Kṛṣṇaloka, Kṛṣṇa's eternal abode in the spiritual sky.

The conclusion, therefore, is not to try to elevate ourselves to any material planet, because the same miserable conditions of
birth, old age, disease, and death exist in all of them. Scientists are very proud of “scientific” advancement, but they have not been able to check old age, disease, and death. They can manufacture something to accelerate death, but nothing that can stop death. That is not within their power.

Those who are intelligent are interested in putting an end to birth, old age, disease, and death and entering into a spiritual life full of eternality, bliss, and knowledge. The bhakti-yogi knows that such a life is possible through practice of Kṛṣṇa consciousness and remembrance of Kṛṣṇa at the time of death.

ananya-cetāḥ satatāṁ
   yo māṁ smarati nityaśaḥ
tasyāhaṁ sulabhaḥ pārtha
   nitya-yuktasya yogināḥ

“For one who remembers Me without deviation, I am easy to obtain, O son of Prthū, because of his constant engagement in devotional service.” (Bg. 8.14) In this verse, the word nitya-yukta means “continuously in trance.” Such a person who is continuously thinking of Kṛṣṇa and always engaged in Kṛṣṇa consciousness is the highest yogī. His attention is not diverted to jñāna-yoga, dhyāna-yoga, or any other system. For him, there is only one system—Kṛṣṇa. Ananya-cetāḥ means “without deviation.” A Kṛṣṇa conscious devotee is not disturbed by anything, because his mind is always concentrated on Kṛṣṇa. The word satatāṁ means that he is thinking of Kṛṣṇa at all places and at all times. When Kṛṣṇa descended onto this earth, He appeared in Vṛndāvana. Although I am presently living in America, my residence is in Vṛndāvana because I am always thinking of Kṛṣṇa. Although I may be in a New York apartment, my consciousness is there, and this is as good as being there.

Kṛṣṇa consciousness means always living with Kṛṣṇa in His spiritual planet. Because we are conscious of Kṛṣṇa, we are already living with Him. We simply have to wait to give up this material body to go there. For one who remembers Kṛṣṇa without deviation, He is easy to obtain. Tasyāhaṁ sulabhaḥ pārtha: “I become very cheap for them.” For one who takes to Kṛṣṇa consciousness, the most valuable thing becomes very easy to obtain. Because one is engaged in bhakti-yoga, Kṛṣṇa becomes easily available. Why should we try so hard to attain Kṛṣṇa, when Kṛṣṇa Himself says, “I am easy to obtain”? We have only to chant Hare Kṛṣṇa, Hare Kṛṣṇa, Kṛṣṇa Kṛṣṇa, Hare Hare/ Hare Rāma, Hare Rāma, Rāma Rāma, Hare Hare twenty-four hours daily. There is no fast rule and regulation. We can chant in the street or on the subway, in our home or in our office. There is neither expenditure nor tax.

Actually Kṛṣṇa, being omnipotent, is unconquerable, but it is said that He is not only obtained but conquered through pure devotional service. As stated before, it is generally very difficult to realize the Supreme Personality of Godhead; therefore one of His names is Ajita, meaning, “He whom no one can conquer.” In Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam (10.14.3), Lord Brahmā prays to Ajita,

jñāne prayāsaṁ udapāsaṁ namanta eva
   jīvanti san-mukharitāṁ bhavadiya-vārtāṁ
   sthāne sīhitāṁ śruti-gitāṁ tanu-vān-manobhir
   ye prāyaśa jīta jīto 'py asi tais tri-lokyāṁ

“O my dear Lord Ajita, those devotees who have thrown away the impersonal conceptions of the Absolute Truth and have therefore abandoned discussing empiric philosophical truths should hear from self-realized devotees about Your holy name, form, pastimes, and qualities. They should completely follow the principles of devotional service and remain free from illicit sex, gambling, intoxication, and animal slaughter. Surrendering themselves fully with body, words, and mind, they can live in any āśrama or social status. Indeed, You are conquered by such persons, although You are always unconquerable.”

In this verse, the words jñāne prayāsāṁ refer to theosophists and philosophers who are trying year after year and life after life to understand God, or the Absolute Truth. Their attempts are like those of the frog in a well trying to comprehend the vastness of the Atlantic and Pacific oceans. Even our attempts to measure outer space are futile, to say nothing of the attempt to measure
God. Such attempts are doomed to failure; therefore Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam recommends that we abandon all attempts to measure the Supreme. It is completely useless to try to understand God by our limited knowledge, and an intelligent man understands this. We should become submissive and try to understand that our position is that of a very insignificant segment in this creation. The words namanta eva indicate that we are just to become submissive in order to understand the Supreme from a reliable source. And what is that source? San-mukharitām: from the lips of realized souls. Arjuna is understanding God directly from the lips of Kṛṣṇa, and we have to understand God through the lips of Arjuna or his bona fide representative. We can understand the transcendental nature of God only from a reliable source. That source may be Indian, European, American, Japanese, Hindu, Muslim, or whatever. The circumstances are not important. We just have to try to understand by hearing and then try to put the process to practice in our daily lives. By becoming submissive, hearing from the right source, and trying to apply the teachings in our daily lives, we can become conquerors of the Supreme. For one who does this, Lord Kṛṣṇa becomes easily available. Ordinarily, God realization is very difficult, but it is very easy for one who submissive to attract the attention of God. My Guru Mahārāja used to say, “Don’t try to see God, see you. God will take care of you. You don’t have to try to see Him.”

This should be our attitude. We should not think, “I want to see God. O God, please come and stand before me. Be like my servant.” But since God is no one’s servant, we have to oblige Him by our love and service. We all know how difficult it is to see the king or president of a country. It is practically impossible for an ordinary man to get an interview with such an important person, to say nothing of having this important person come and stand before him. Yet people are demanding that the Supreme Personality of Godhead come and stand before them. It is our nature to hanker after Kṛṣṇa, because He is the most attractive, most beautiful, most opulent, most powerful, most learned, and most famous person in the universe. Everyone hankers after these qualities, and Kṛṣṇa is the reservoir of all these qualities, and He possesses them in full. Kṛṣṇa is the reservoir of everything (rasa vai sah); therefore when we hanker after beauty or power or knowledge or fame, we should just turn our attention to Kṛṣṇa. Then we will automatically get whatever our hearts desire.

“I worship Govinda, the primeval Lord, only the tips of the toes of whose lotus feet are approached by the yogīs and jñānis, who travel for billions of years at the speed of the wind or mind.” We can all understand how great the speed of mind is. Although sitting in New York City, I can immediately think of India, which is thousands and thousands of miles away. It is herein stated that even if one travels at this speed for billions of years, Kṛṣṇa will still remain inconceivable. The word muni-pungavānām refers to a great thinker, not an ordinary man. Even if such a great thinker travels for millions of years at the speed of mind, he will still find the Supreme Person unknowable. Yet for one who takes undeviatingly to this path of Kṛṣṇa consciousness, Kṛṣṇa is easy to obtain. Why is this? Nitya-yuktiṣya yoginaḥ: “Because such a person is constantly engaged in My devotional service, and I cannot forget him.” So this is the process. We have only to become submissive to attract the attention of God. My Guru Mahārāja used to say, “Don’t try to see God, but work in such a way that God will see you. God will take care of you. You don’t have to try to see Him.”
CHAPTER TEN

The Path of Perfection

mām upetya punar janma
duḥkhālayam aśāśvatam
nāpnuvanti mahātmānāḥ
samsiddhim paramāṁ gatāḥ

"After attaining Me, the great souls, who are yogīs in devotion, never return to this temporary world, which is full of miseries, because they have attained the highest perfection." (Bg. 8.15)

This material world is certified by its very creator, the Supreme Lord, as duḥkhālayam, which means "the place of miseries." Since this is the case, how can we possibly make it comfortable by so-called scientific advancement? Duḥkhā means "misery" or "suffering," and real suffering is birth, old age, disease, and death. We have set these problems aside because we cannot solve them; therefore scientists concentrate on atomic bombs and spaceships. Why can't they solve these important problems that are always causing us to suffer? Obviously, they haven't the power to do so.

But in this verse, Śrī Kṛṣṇa gives the solution: mām upetya punar janma. That is, "If one attains My platform, he does not come back again to this place of misery." Unfortunately, in the mode of ignorance, people cannot understand that they are in a
miserable situation. Animals cannot understand their miserable situations because they haven’t the reason. Man possesses reason whereby he can understand this, but in this age people are using their reasoning power in order to gratify their animal propensities. Reason should be used in getting liberated from this miserable condition. However, if we engage in Kṛṣṇa consciousness twenty-four hours a day without deviation, we will go to Kṛṣṇa and not be reborn in this miserable world. Mahātmānas sarśiddhiṁ paramāṁ gatāḥ: those great souls who have attained the highest perfection, Kṛṣṇa consciousness, are forever freed from misery. In this verse, the word mahātmā refers to a Kṛṣṇa conscious man eligible to enter the abode of Kṛṣṇa. The word mahātmā does not refer to a political leader like Mahatma Gandhi but to a great soul, a pure devotee of Kṛṣṇa.

When Kṛṣṇa says that the mahātmā enters His abode, He is referring to His transcendental kingdom, Goloka Vṛndāvana. The Vṛndāvana from which I have come is called Bhauma Vṛndāvana, which means it is the same Vṛndāvana descended on this earth. Just as Kṛṣṇa descended on this earth through His own internal potency, similarly His dharma, His abode, also descends. In other words, when Kṛṣṇa descends on this earth, He manifests Himself in that particular land, Vṛndāvana, and therefore that land is also sacred. Apart from this, Kṛṣṇa has His own abode in the spiritual sky, and this is called Goloka Vṛndāvana.

The mahātmā prepares in this life to enter that transcendental abode. The human form of life can utilize nature to its best interest. Animals cannot. These facilities should be utilized in striving to become a mahātmā and putting an end to birth in this material world, which is characterized by threefold miseries. The threefold miseries are those that pertain to the mind or the body, natural disturbances, and miseries caused by other living entities. Whatever our position in this material world, there is always some kind of misery being inflicted upon us. Śrī Kṛṣṇa frankly says that it is not possible to avoid misery in this material world, because this world is meant for misery. Unless miseries are present, we cannot come to Kṛṣṇa consciousness. Misery serves as an impetus to help elevate us to Kṛṣṇa consciousness. An intelligent person understands that although he does not want misery, miseries are being inflicted upon him by force. No one wants misery, but a person should be intelligent enough to question, “Why are these miseries being forced upon me?” Unfortunately, in modern civilization, people try to set miseries aside, thinking, “Oh, why suffer? Let me cover my miseries with some intoxication.” However, the miseries of life cannot be solved by artificial intoxication. As soon as the intoxication is over, one returns to the same point. The miseries of material existence can be solved only by Kṛṣṇa consciousness. If we always remain in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, we’ll be transferred to Kṛṣṇa’s planet upon leaving this material body. That is called the highest perfection.

People may inquire, “Well, you say that entering Kṛṣṇa’s planet constitutes the highest perfection, but we are interested in going to the moon. Is this not a kind of perfection?” Well, the desire to enter the higher planets is always there in the human mind. In fact, another name for the living entity is sarva-gata, which means that he wants to travel everywhere. That is the nature of the living entity. Americans who have money often go to India, Europe, or some other country, because they do not like to stagnate in one place. That is our nature, and therefore we are interested in going to the moon or wherever. But according to Kṛṣṇa, even if we attain the higher planets, we are still subject to the material miseries.

abhrama-bhuvanāl lokāḥ
punar āvantino 'rjuna
mām upetya tu kaunteya
punar janma na vidyate

“From the highest planet in the material world down to the lowest, all are places of misery wherein repeated birth and death take place. But one who attains to My abode, O son of Kunti, never takes birth again.” (Bg. 8.16)

The universe is divided into fourteen planetary systems (caturdāsa-bhuvana)—seven lower and seven higher. The earth is situated in the middle. In this verse, Śrī Kṛṣṇa says, abhrama-bhuvanāl lokāḥ: even if one enters the highest planet,
Brahmaloka, there is still birth and death. The words punar āvar-tinah mean “returning again,” or “repetition of birth and death.” We are changing bodies just as we change clothes, leaving one body and entering another. All planets are filled with living entities. We shouldn’t think that only the earth is inhabited. There are living entities on the higher planets and lower planets as well. From our experience, we can see that no place on earth is vacant of living entities. If we dig into the earth, we find some worms, and if we go into the water we find many aquatics. The air is filled with birds, and if we analyze outer space, we will find many living entities. It is illogical to conclude that there are no living entities on the other planets. To the contrary, they are full of living entities.

In any case, Kṛṣṇa says that from the highest planet to the lowest planet, there is repetition of birth and death. Yet again, as in the former verse, He says, mām upetya: “If you reach My planet, you don’t have to return to this miserable material world.” To stress this point, Śrī Kṛṣṇa repeats that upon reaching Goloka Vṛndāvana, His eternal abode, one is liberated from the cycle of birth and death and attains eternal life. It is the duty of human life to understand these problems and attain a blissful, eternal life that is full of knowledge. Unfortunately, people in this age have forgotten the aim of life. Why? Durāsaṁya ye bahir-artha-mātinah (Bhāg. 7.5.31). People have been trapped by the material glitter—by skyscrapers, big factories, and political activities. People do not stop to consider that however big the skyscraper may be, they will not be allowed to live there indefinitely. We should not spoil our energy, therefore, in building great cities but should employ our energy to elevate ourselves to Kṛṣṇa consciousness. Kṛṣṇa consciousness is not a religious formula or some spiritual recreation but is the most important factor in our lives.

People are interested in attaining higher planets because there one’s enjoyment is a thousand times greater and the duration of life much longer.

The duration of the material universe is limited. It is manifested in cycles of kalpas. A kalpa is a day of Brahmā, and one day of Brahmā consists of a thousand cycles of four yugas, or ages: Satya, Tretā, Dvāpara, and Kali. The cycle of Satya is characterized by virtue, wisdom, and religion, there being practically no ignorance and vice, and the yuga lasts 1,728,000 years. In the Tretā-yuga vice is introduced, and this yuga lasts 1,296,000 years. In the Dvāpara-yuga there is an even greater decline in virtue and religion, vice increasing, and this yuga lasts 864,000 years. And finally, in Kali-yuga (the yuga we have now been experiencing over the past 5,000 years), there is an abundance of strife, ignorance, irreligion, and vice, true virtue being practically non-existent, and this yuga lasts 432,000 years. In Kali-yuga vice increases to such a point that at the termination of the yuga, the Supreme Lord Himself appears as the Kalki-avatāra, vanquishes the demons, saves His devotees, and commences another Satya-yuga. Then the process is set rolling again. These four yugas rotating a thousand times comprise one day of Brahmā, the creator god, and the same number comprise one night. Brahmā lives one hundred of such “years” and then dies. These “hundred years” by earth calculations total 311 trillion and 40 million earth years. By these calculations, the life of Brahmā seems fantastic and interminable, but from the viewpoint of eternity, it is as brief as a lightning flash. In the Causal Ocean there are innumerable Brahmās rising and disappearing like bubbles in the Atlantic. Brahmā and his creation are all part of the material universe, and therefore they are in constant flux.

In the material universe, not even Brahmā is free from the process of birth, old age, disease, and death. Brahmā, however, is directly engaged in the service of the Supreme Lord in the management of this universe; therefore he at once attains liberation. Elevated sannyāsīs are promoted to Brahmā’s particular planet, Brahmaloka, which is the highest planet in the material
universe and which survives all the heavenly planets in the upper strata of the planetary system, but in due course Brahma and all inhabitants of Brahmaloka are subject to death, according to the law of material nature. So even if we live millions and trillions of years, we have to die. Death cannot be avoided. Throughout the entire universe the process of creation and annihilation is taking place, as described in the next verse:

\[
\text{avyaktād vyaktayāḥ sarvāḥ}
\]

\[
\text{prabhavanty ahar-āgame}
\]

\[
rātry-āgame praliyante
\]

\[
tatraivavyakta-san īñake
\]

“When Brahma’s day is manifest, this multitude of living entities comes into being, and at the arrival of Brahma’s night they are all annihilated.” (Bg. 8.18)

Unless we go to the spiritual sky, there is no escaping this process of birth and death, creation and annihilation. When Brahma’s days are finished, all these planetary systems are covered by water, and when Brahma rises again, creation takes place. The word ahar means “in the daytime,” which is twelve hours of Brahma’s life. During this time this material manifestation—all these planets—are seen, but when night comes they are all merged in water. That is, they are annihilated. The word rātry-āgame means “at the fall of night.” During this time, all these planets are invisible because they are inundated with water. This flux is the nature of the material world.

\[
bhūta-grāmaḥ sa evāyam
\]

\[
bhūtvā bhūtvā praliyate
\]

\[
rātry-āgame 'vāsāḥ pārtha
\]

\[
prabhavaty ahar-āgame
\]

“Again and again the day comes, and this host of beings is active; and again the night falls, O Pārtha, and they are helplessly dissolved.” (Bg. 8.19) Although we do not want devastation, devastation is inevitable. At night, everything is flooded, and when day appears, gradually the waters disappear. For instance, on this one planet, the surface is three-fourths covered with water. Gradually, land is emerging, and the day will come when there will no longer be water but simply land. That is nature’s process.

\[
\text{paras tasmāt tu bhāvo 'nyo}
\]

\[
'vyakto 'vyaktāt sanātanaḥ
\]

\[
yāḥ sa sarvesu bhūteṣu
\]

\[
naśyatsu na vinaśyati
\]

“Yet there is another nature, which is eternal and is transcendental to this manifested and nonmanifested matter. It is supreme and is never annihilated. When all in this world is annihilated, that part remains as it is.” (Bg. 8.20)

We cannot calculate the length and breadth of this universe. There are millions and millions of universes like this within this material world, and above this material world is the spiritual sky, where the planets are all eternal. Life on those planets is also eternal. This material manifestation comprises only one fourth of the entire creation. Ekāṁśena sthito jagat. Ekāṁśena means “one fourth.” Three fourths of the creation is beyond this material sky, which is covered like a ball. This covering extends millions and millions of miles, and only after penetrating that covering can one enter the spiritual sky. That is open sky, eternal sky. In this verse it is stated, paras tasmāt tu bhāvo 'nyah: “Yet there is another nature.” The word bhāvo means another “nature.” We have experience only with this material nature, but from Bhagavad-gītā we understand that there is a spiritual nature that is transcendental and eternal. We actually belong to that spiritual nature, because we are spirit, but presently we are covered by this material body, and therefore we are a combination of the material and spiritual. Just as we can understand that we are a combination of both natures, we should understand also that there is a spiritual world beyond this material universe. Spiritual nature is called superior, and material nature is called inferior, because without spirit, matter cannot move.

This cannot be understood by experimental knowledge. We
may look at millions and millions of stars through telescopes, but we cannot approach what we are seeing. Similarly, our senses are so insufficient that we cannot approach an understanding of the spiritual nature. Being incapable, we should not try to understand God and His kingdom by experimental knowledge. Rather, we have to understand by hearing Bhagavad-gītā. There is no other way. If we want to know who our father is, we simply have to believe our mother. We have no other way of knowing except by her. Similarly, in order to understand who God is and what His nature is, we have to accept the information given in Bhagavad-gītā. There is no question of experimenting. Once we become advanced in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, we will realize God and His nature. We can come to understand, “Yes, there is God and a spiritual kingdom, and I have to go there. Indeed, I must prepare myself to go there.”

The word vyakta means “manifest.” This material universe that we are seeing (or partially seeing) before us is manifest. At least at night we can see that stars are twinkling and that there are innumerable planets. But beyond this vyakta is another nature, called avyakta, which is unmanifest. That is the spiritual nature, which is sanātana, eternal. This material nature has a beginning and an end, but that spiritual nature has neither beginning nor end. This material sky is within the covering of the mahat-tattva, matter. This matter is like a cloud. When there is a storm, it appears that the entire sky is covered with clouds, but actually only an insignificant part of the sky is covered. Because we are very minute, if just a few hundred miles are covered, it appears that the entire sky is covered. As soon as a wind comes and blows the clouds away, we can see the sky once again. Like the clouds, this mahat-tattva covering has a beginning and an end. Similarly, the material body, being a part of material nature, has a beginning and an end. The body is born, grows, stays for some time, leaves some by-products, dwindles, and then vanishes. Whatever material manifestation we see undergoes these six basic transformations. Whatever exists within material nature will ultimately be vanquished. But herein Kṛṣṇa is telling us that beyond this vanishing, cloudlike material nature, there is a superior nature, which is sanātana, eternal. Yāh sa sarveṣu bhūteṣu naśyatu na viṇāśyati. When this material manifestation is annihilated, that spiritual sky remains. This is called avyakta 'vyakta.

In the Second Canto of Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam, we find a description of the spiritual sky and the people who live there. Its nature and features are also discussed. From this Second Canto we understand that there are spiritual airplanes in the spiritual sky, and that the living entities there—who are all liberated—travel like lightning on those planes throughout the spiritual sky. This material world is simply an imitation; whatever we see here is simply a shadow of what exists there. The material world is like a cinema, wherein we see but an imitation or a shadow of the real thing that is existing. This material world is only a shadow. As stated in Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam (1.1.1), yatra tri-sarga 'mrṣa: “This illusory material world is a combination of matter.” In store windows we often see mannequins, but no sane man thinks that these mannequins are real. He can see that they are imitations. Similarly, whatever we see here may be beautiful, just as a mannequin may be beautiful, but it is simply an imitation of the real beauty found in the spiritual world. As Śrīdhara Svāmī says, yat satyatayo mithyā sargo 'pi satyavat pratiyate: the spiritual world is real, and this unreal material manifestation only appears to be real. We must understand that reality will never be vanquished and that in essence reality means eternality. Therefore material pleasure, which is temporary, is not actual; real pleasure exists in Kṛṣṇa. Consequently, those who are after the reality don’t participate in this shadow pleasure.

Thus when everything in the material world is annihilated, that spiritual nature remains eternally, and it is the purpose of human life to reach that spiritual sky. Unfortunately, people are not aware of the reality of the spiritual sky. According to Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam (7.5.31), na te viduḥ svārtha-gatīṁ hi viṣṇum: people do not know their self-interest. They do not know that human life is meant for understanding spiritual reality and preparing oneself to be transferred to that reality. No one can remain here in this material
world. All Vedic literatures instruct us in this way. *Tamasi mā jyoitir gama:* “Don’t remain in this darkness. Go to the light.” According to the Fifteenth Chapter of *Bhagavad-gītā* (15.6),

\[
na \text{ tad bhāsayate sūryo} \\
na \text{ śaśāṅko na pāvakaḥ} \\
yad gatvā na nivartante \\
tad dhāma paramāṁ mama
\]

“That abode of Mine is not illumined by the sun or moon, nor by electricity. One who reaches it never returns to this material world.” This material world is dark by nature, and we are artificially illuminating it with electric lights, fire, and so on. In any case, its nature is dark, but the spiritual nature is full of light. When the sun is present, there is no darkness; similarly, every planet in the spiritual sky is self-luminous. Therefore there is no darkness, nor is there need of sun, moon, or electricity. The word *sūryo* means “sun,” *śaśāṅko* means “moon,” and *pāvakaḥ* means “fire” or “electricity.” So these are not required in the spiritual sky for illumination. And again, Kṛṣṇa herein says, *yad gatvā na nivartante tad dhāma paramāṁ mama:* “That is My supreme abode, and one who reaches it never returns to this material world.” This is stated throughout *Bhagavad-gītā.* Again, in this Eighth Chapter (Bg. 8.21),

\[
\text{avyakto 'kṣara ity uktas} \\
\text{tam āḥuh paramāṁ gatim} \\
\text{yam prāpya na nivartante} \\
\text{tad dhāma paramāṁ mama}
\]

“That supreme abode is called unmanifested and infallible, and it is the supreme destination. When one goes there, he never comes back. That is My supreme abode.” Again, the word *avyakta,* meaning “unmanifest,” is used. The word *aṅkṣara* means “that which is never annihilated,” or “that which is infallible.” This means that since the supreme abode is eternal, it is not subject to the six transformations mentioned previously.

*The Path of Perfection*

Because we are presently covered by a dress of material senses, we cannot see the spiritual world, and the spiritual nature is inconceivable for us. Yet we can *feel* that there is something spiritual present. Even a man completely ignorant of the spiritual nature can somehow feel its presence. One need only analyze his body silently: “What am I? Am I this finger? Am I this body? Am I this hair? No, I am not this, and I am not that. I am something other than this body. I am something beyond this body. What is that? That is the spiritual.” In this way, we can feel or sense the presence of spirituality within this matter. We can sense the absence of spirit when a body is dead. If we witness someone dying, we can sense that something is leaving the body. Although we do not have the eyes to see it, that something is spirit. Its presence in the body is explained in the very beginning of *Bhagavad-gītā* (2.17):

\[
\text{avināśi tu tad viddhi} \\
yena sarvam idaṁ tatam \\
vinaśam avyayasāya \\
na kaścit kartum arhati
\]

“Know that which pervades the entire body is indestructible. No one is able to destroy the imperishable soul.”

Spiritual existence is eternal, whereas the body is not. It is said that the spiritual atmosphere is *avyakta,* unmanifest. How, then, can it be manifest for us? Making the unmanifest manifest is this very process of Kṛṣṇa consciousness. According to *Padma Purāṇa,*

\[
\text{ataḥ śrī-kṛṣṇa-nāmādi} \\
\text{na bhaved grāhyam indriyaiḥ} \\
\text{sevonmukhe hi jīhvādau} \\
\text{svayam eva sphuraty adah}
\]

“No one can understand Kṛṣṇa as He is by the blunt material senses. But He reveals Himself to the devotees, being pleased with them for their transcendental loving service unto Him.” In this verse, the word *indriyaiḥ* means “the senses.” We have five senses for gathering knowledge (eyes, ears, nose, tongue, and
skin), and five senses for working (voice, hands, legs, genitals, and anus). These ten senses are under the control of the mind. It is stated in this verse that with these dull material senses, we cannot understand Kṛṣṇa's name, form, and so forth. Why is this? Kṛṣṇa is completely spiritual, and He is also absolute. Therefore His name, form, qualities, and paraphernalia are also spiritual. Due to material conditioning, or material bondage, we cannot presently understand what is spiritual, but this ignorance can be removed by chanting Hare Kṛṣṇa. If a man is sleeping, he can be awakened by sound vibration. You can call him, "Come on, it's time to get up!" Although the person is unconscious, hearing is so prominent that even a sleeping man can be awakened by sound vibration. Similarly, overpowered by this material conditioning, our spiritual consciousness is presently sleeping, but it can be revived by this transcendental vibration of Hare Kṛṣṇa. As stated before, Hare refers to the energy of the Lord, and Kṛṣṇa and Rāma refer to the Lord Himself. Therefore, when we chant Hare Kṛṣṇa, we are praying, "O Lord, O energy of the Lord, please accept me." We have no other prayer than "Please accept me." Lord Caitanya Mahāprabhu taught us that we should simply cry and pray that the Lord accept us. As Caitanya Mahāprabhu Himself prayed,

![Verse 11.2.42](image)

"O Kṛṣṇa, son of Nanda, somehow or other I have fallen into this ocean of nescience and ignorance. Please pick me up and place me as one of the atoms at Your lotus feet." If a man has fallen into the ocean, his only hope for survival is that someone comes to pick him up. He only has to be lifted one inch above the water in order to feel immediate relief. Similarly, as soon as we take to Kṛṣṇa consciousness, we are lifted up, and we feel immediate relief.
as a hungry man eats, he feels immediate satisfaction and says, “No, I don’t want any more. I am satisfied.” This satisfaction is a characteristic of the Kṛṣṇa conscious man.

brahma-bhūtaḥ prasannāṁ
na śocati na kāṅkṣati
samaḥ sarvesu bhūtesu
mad-bhaktiṁ labhate parām

“One who is thus transcendentally situated at once realizes the Supreme Brahman. He never laments nor desires to have anything; he is equally disposed to every living entity. In that state he attains pure devotional service unto Me.” (Bg. 18.54)

As soon as one is spiritually realized, he feels full satisfaction and no longer hankers after flickering material enjoyment. As stated in the Second Chapter of Bhagavad-gītā (2.59),

viśāyā vinivartante
nirāhārasya dehinaḥ
rasa-varjam raso ‘py asya
param drśtvā nivartate

“The embodied soul may be restricted from sense enjoyment, though the taste for sense objects remains. But, ceasing such engagements by experiencing a higher taste, he is fixed in consciousness.” A doctor may tell a diseased man, “Don’t eat this. Don’t eat that. Don’t have sex. Don’t.” In this way, a diseased man is forced to accept so many “don’ts,” but inside he is thinking, “Oh, if I can just get these things, I’ll be happy.” The desires remain inside. However, when one is established in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, he is so strong inside that he doesn’t experience the desire. Although he’s not impotent, he doesn’t want sex. He can marry thrice, but still be detached. Param drśtvā nivartate. When something superior is acquired, one naturally gives up all inferior things. That which is superior is the Supreme Personality of Godhead, and atheism and impersonalism cannot give us this. He is attained only by unalloyed devotion.

“The Supreme Personality of Godhead, who is greater than all, is attained by unalloyed devotion. Although He is present in His abode, He is all-pervading, and everything is situated within Him.” (Bg. 8.22) The words purusah sa parah indicate the supreme person who is greater than all others. This is not a void speaking, but a person who has all the characteristics of personality in full. Just as we are talking face to face, when we reach the supreme abode we can talk to God face to face. We can play with Him, eat with Him, and everything else. This state is not acquired by mental speculation but by transcendental loving service (bhaktiyā labhyāḥ). The words tv ananyayā indicate that this bhakti must be without adulteration. It must be unalloyed.

Although the Supreme Personality is a person and is present in His abode in the spiritual sky, He is so widespread that everything is within Him. He is both inside and outside. Although God is everywhere, He still has His kingdom, His abode. The sun may pervade the universe with its sunshine, yet the sun itself is a separate entity.

In His supreme abode, the Supreme Lord has no rival. Wherever we may be, we find a predominating personality. In the United States, the predominating personality is the President. However, when the next election comes, the President will have so many rivals, but in the spiritual sky the Supreme Lord has no rival. Those who want to become rivals are placed in this material world, under the conditions of material nature. In the spiritual sky there is no rivalry, and all the inhabitants therein are liberated souls. From Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam we receive information that their bodily features resemble gods. In some of the spiritual planets, God manifests a two-armed form, and in others He manifests a four-armed form. The living entities of those planets have corresponding features, and one cannot distinguish who is God and who is not. This is called sārūpya-mukti liberation, wherein one
has the same features as the Lord. There are five kinds of liberation: sāyujya, sārupya, sālokya, sārṣṭi, and sāmīpya. Sāyujya-mukti means merging into God’s impersonal effulgence, the brahma- jyoti. We have discussed this, and have concluded that the attempt to merge and lose individuality is not desirable and is very risky. Sārupya-mukti means attaining a body exactly like God’s. Sālokya-mukti means living on the same planet with God. Sārṣṭi-mukti means having the opulence of God. For instance, God is very powerful, and we can become powerful like Him. That is called sāmīpya. Sāmīpya-mukti means always remaining with God as one of His associates. For instance, Arjuna is always with Kṛṣṇa as His friend, and this is called sāmīpya-mukti. We can attain any one of these five types of liberation, but out of these five, sāyujya-mukti, merging into the brahma-jyoti, is rejected by Vaiṣṇava philosophy. For instance, God is very powerful, and we can become powerful like Him. That is called sāmīpya. Sāmīpya-mukti means always remaining with God as one of His associates. For instance, Arjuna is always with Kṛṣṇa as His friend, and this is called sāmīpya-mukti. We can attain any one of these five types of liberation, but out of these five, sāyujya-mukti, merging into the brahma-jyoti, is rejected by Vaiṣṇava philosophy. According to the Vaiṣṇava philosophy, we worship God as He is and retain our separate identity eternally in order to serve Him. According to the Mayāvāda philosophy, impersonalism, one tries to lose his individual identity and merge into the existence of the Supreme. That, however, is a suicidal policy and is not recommended by Kṛṣṇa in Bhagavad-gītā.

This has also been rejected by Lord Caitanya Mahāprabhu, who advocated worship in separation. As stated before, the pure devotee does not even want liberation; he simply asks to remain Kṛṣṇa’s devotee birth after birth. This is Lord Caitanya Mahāprabhu’s prayer, and the words “birth after birth” indicate that there is no liberation. This means that the devotee doesn’t care whether he is liberated or not. He simply wants to engage in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, to serve the Supreme Lord. Always wanting to engage in God’s transcendental loving service is the symptom of pure devotion. Of course, wherever a devotee is, he remains in the spiritual kingdom, even though in the material body. On his part, he does not demand any of the five types of liberation, nor anything for his personal superiority or comfort. But in order to associate with God in the spiritual planets, one must become His pure devotee.

For those who are not pure devotees, Lord Kṛṣṇa explains at what times one should leave the body in order to attain liberation.

“O best of the Bhāratas, I shall now explain to you the different times at which, passing away from this world, one does or does not come back.” (Bg. 8.23) In India, unlike in the West, it is common for astrologers to make minute calculations of the astronomical situation at the moment of one’s birth. Indeed, a person’s horoscope is read not only when he is born but also when he dies, in order to determine what his situation will be in the next life. All this can be determined by astrological calculation. In this verse, Lord Kṛṣṇa is accepting those astrological principles, confirming that if one leaves his body at a particular time, he may attain liberation. If one dies at one moment, he may be liberated, or if he dies at another moment, he may have to return to the material world. It is all a question of “chance,” but that chance somehow or other is what one has. For the devotee, however, there is no question of chance. Whatever the astrological situation, the devotee in Kṛṣṇa consciousness is guaranteed liberation. For others, there are chances that if they leave their body at a particular moment, they may attain liberation and enter the spiritual kingdom, or they may be reborn.

“Those who know the Supreme Brahman pass away from the world during the influence of the fiery god, in the light, at an auspicious moment, during the fortnight of the moon and the six months when the sun travels in the north.” (Bg. 8.24) As we all know, the sun’s movements are different: six months it is north of the equator, and six months it is south. The sun is also moving, according to Vedic calculations, and from Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam we
are informed that the sun is situated at the center of the universe. Just as all the planets are moving, the sun is also moving at a speed calculated to be sixteen thousand miles per second. If a person dies when the sun is in the northern hemisphere, he can attain liberation. That is not only the verdict of Bhagavad-gītā, but also of other scriptures.

dhūmo rātris tathā kṛṣṇaḥ
śan-māsā dakṣināyānam
tatra cāndramasam jyotir
yogī prāpya nivartate

“The mystic who passes away from this world during the smoke, the night, the moonless fortnight, or in the six months when the sun passes to the south, or who reaches the moon planet, again comes back.” (Bg. 8.25) No one can say when he is going to die, and in that sense the moment of one's death is accidental. However, for a devotee in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, there is no question of “accidents.”

śukla-kṛṣṇe gati hy ete
jagataḥ śāśvate mate
ekayā yāty anāvṛttim
anyāvārtaṁ punaḥ

“According to the Vedas, there are two ways of passing from this world—one in light and one in darkness. When one passes in light, he does not come back; but when one passes in darkness, he returns.” (Bg. 8.26) The same description of departure and return is quoted by Ācārya Baladeva Vidyābhūṣāṇa from the Chāndogya Upaniṣad. In such a way, those who are fruitive laborers and philosophical speculators from time immemorial are constantly going and coming. Actually they do not attain ultimate salvation, for they do not surrender to Kṛṣṇa.

naite sṛti pārtha jānan
yogī muhyati kaścana

“The devotees who know these two paths, O Arjuna, are never bewildered. Therefore be always fixed in devotion.” (Bg. 8.27) Herein the Lord confirms that there is no “chance” for one who practices bhakti-yoga. His destination is certain. Whether he dies when the sun is in the northern or southern hemisphere is of no importance. As we have already stated, if one thinks of Kṛṣṇa at the time of death, he will at once be transferred to Kṛṣṇa’s abode. Therefore Kṛṣṇa tells Arjuna to always remain in Kṛṣṇa consciousness. This is possible through the chanting of Hare Kṛṣṇa. Since Kṛṣṇa and His spiritual kingdom are nondifferent, being absolute, Kṛṣṇa and His sound vibration are the same. Simply by vibrating Kṛṣṇa's name, we can enjoy Kṛṣṇa’s association. If we are walking down the street chanting Hare Kṛṣṇa, Kṛṣṇa is also going with us. If we walk down the street and look up at the sky, we may see that the sun or the moon is accompanying us. I can recall about fifty years ago, when I was a householder, my second son, who was about four years old at the time, was walking with me down the street, and he suddenly asked me, “Father, why is the moon going with us?”

If a material object like the moon has the power to accompany us, we can surely understand that the Supreme Lord, who is all-powerful, can always remain with us. Being omnipotent, He can always keep us company, provided that we are also qualified to keep His company. Pure devotees are always merged in the thought of Kṛṣṇa and are always remembering that Kṛṣṇa is with them. Lord Caitanya Mahāprabhu has confirmed the absolute nature of Kṛṣṇa in His Śikṣāṣṭaka (verse 2):

nāmāṁ akāri bahudhā niṣa-sarva-saktis
tatrārpaṇāḥ niṣamitaṁ smarane na kālaṁ
etādṛśī tava kṛpā bhagavan mamāpi
durdaivām idrśam ihājani nānurāgaḥ

“My Lord, O Supreme Personality of Godhead, in Your holy
name there is all good fortune for the living entity, and therefore You have many names, such as Kṛṣṇa and Govinda, by which You expand Yourself. You have invested all Your potencies in those names, and there are no hard-and-fast rules for remembering them. My dear Lord, although You bestow such mercy upon the fallen, conditioned souls by liberally teaching Your holy names, I am so unfortunate that I commit offenses while chanting the holy name, and therefore I do not achieve attachment for chanting."

We may take the effort to spend a great deal of money and attempt to build or establish a temple for Kṛṣṇa, but if we do so we must observe many rules and regulations and see properly to the temple's management. But herein it is confirmed that simply by chanting, any man can have the benefit of keeping company with Kṛṣṇa. Just as Arjuna is deriving benefit by being in the same chariot with Lord Śrī Kṛṣṇa, we can also benefit by associating with Kṛṣṇa through the chanting of His holy names—Hare Kṛṣṇa, Hare Kṛṣṇa, Kṛṣṇa Kṛṣṇa, Hare Hare/ Hare Rāma, Hare Rāma, Rāma Rāma, Hare Hare. This mahā-mantra is not my personal concoction but is authorized by Lord Caitanya Mahāprabhu, who is considered to be not only an authority but the incarnation of Lord Śrī Kṛṣṇa Himself. It was Lord Caitanya Mahāprabhu who said, "O Lord, You are so kind to the people of this material world that You expand Yourself in Your holy name so that they can associate with You."

Although the mahā-mantra is in the Sanskrit language and many people do not know its meaning, it is still so attractive that people participate when it is chanted publicly. When chanting the mahā-mantra, we are completely safe, even in this most dangerous position. We should always be aware that in this material world, we are always in a dangerous position. Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam confirms: padaṁ padaṁ yad vipadāṁ na teṣām. In this world, there is danger at every step. The devotees of the Lord, however, are not meant to remain in this miserable, dangerous place. Therefore we should take care to advance in Kṛṣṇa consciousness while in this human form. Then our happiness is assured.

Appendixes
About the Author

His Divine Grace A. C. Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda appeared in this world in 1896 in Calcutta, India. He first met his spiritual master, Śrīla Bhaktisiddhānta Sarasvatī Gosvāmī, in Calcutta in 1922. Bhaktisiddhānta Sarasvatī, a prominent religious scholar and the founder of sixty-four Gauḍīya Maṭhas (Vedic institutes), liked this educated young man and convinced him to dedicate his life to teaching Vedic knowledge. Śrīla Prabhupāda became his student, and eleven years later (1933) at Allahabad he became his formally initiated disciple.

At their first meeting, in 1922, Śrīla Bhaktisiddhānta Sarasvatī Thākura requested Śrīla Prabhupāda to broadcast Vedic knowledge through the English language. In the years that followed, Śrīla Prabhupāda wrote a commentary on the Bhagavad-gītā, assisted the Gauḍīya Maṭha in its work and, in 1944, without assistance, started an English fortnightly magazine, edited it, typed the manuscripts, and checked the galley proofs. He even distributed the individual copies and struggled to maintain the publication. Once begun, the magazine never stopped; it is now being continued by his disciples in the West and is published in over twenty languages.

Recognizing Śrīla Prabhupāda’s philosophical learning and devotion, the Gauḍīya Vaishnava Society honored him in 1947 with the title “Bhaktivedanta.” In 1950, at the age of fifty-four, Śrīla Prabhupāda retired from married life, adopting the vānaprastha (retired) order to devote more time to his studies and writing. Śrīla Prabhupāda traveled to the holy city of Vṛndāvana, where he lived in very humble circumstances in the historic medieval temple of Rādhā-Dāmodara. There he engaged for several years in deep study and writing. He accepted the renounced order of life (sannyāsa) in 1959. At Rādhā-Dāmodara, Śrīla Prabhupāda began work on his life’s masterpiece: a multivolume translation of and commentary on the eighteen-thousand-verse Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam (Bhāgavata Purāṇa). He also wrote Easy Journey to Other Planets.

After publishing three volumes of the Bhāgavatam, Śrīla
Prabhupāda came to the United States, in 1965, to fulfill the mission of his spiritual master. Subsequently, His Divine Grace wrote more than sixty volumes of authoritative translations, commentaries, and summary studies of the philosophical and religious classics of India.

In 1965, when he first arrived by freighter in New York City, Śrīla Prabhupāda was practically penniless. It was after almost a year of great difficulty that he established the International Society for Krishna Consciousness in July of 1966. Before his passing away on November 14, 1977, he guided the Society and saw it grow to a worldwide confederation of more than one hundred āśramas, schools, temples, institutes, and farm communities.

In 1968, Śrīla Prabhupāda created New Vṛndāban, an experimental Vedic community in the hills of West Virginia. Inspired by the success of New Vṛndāban, now a thriving farm community of more than one thousand acres, his students have since founded several similar communities in the United States and abroad.

In 1972, His Divine Grace introduced the Vedic system of primary and secondary education in the West by founding the Gurukula school in Dallas, Texas. Since then, under his supervision, his disciples have established children's schools throughout the United States and the rest of the world. As of 1980, there are fourteen Gurukula schools worldwide, with the principal educational center now located in Vṛndāvana, India.

Śrīla Prabhupāda also inspired the construction of several large international cultural centers in India. The center at Śrīdhāma Māyāpur in West Bengal is the site for a planned spiritual city, an ambitious project for which construction will extend over the next decade. In Vṛndāvana, India, is the magnificent Kṛṣṇa-Balarāma Temple and International Guesthouse. There is also a major cultural and educational center in Bombay. Other centers are planned in a dozen other important locations on the Indian subcontinent.

Śrīla Prabhupāda's most significant contribution, however, is his books. Highly respected by the academic community for their authoritativeness, depth, and clarity, they are used as standard textbooks in numerous college courses. His writings have been translated into over thirty languages. The Bhaktivedanta Book Trust, established in 1972 exclusively to publish the works of His Divine Grace, has thus become the world's largest publisher of books in the field of Indian religion and philosophy.

In just twelve years, in spite of his advanced age, Śrīla Prabhupāda circled the globe fourteen times on lecture tours that took him to six continents. In spite of such a vigorous schedule, Śrīla Prabhupāda continued to write prolifically. His writings constitute a veritable library of Vedic philosophy, religion, literature, and culture.
References

The text of *The Path of Perfection* is confirmed by standard Vedic authorities. The following authentic scriptures are specifically cited in this volume:


*Bhāgavata*. See: Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam


*Bṛhaṇ-nāradīya Purāṇa*, 38-39

*Caitanya-caritāmṛta*, 25, 36

*Kaṭha Upaniṣad*, 69

*Nārada-pañcarātra*, 88

*Padma Purāṇa*, 27, 29, 143

*Sad-gosvāmy-aṣṭaka*, 81-82

*Ṣikṣāṣṭaka*, 2, 112, 115, 151-52
Glossary

A

Arjuna—the intimate friend of Lord Kṛṣṇa who heard Bhagavad-gītā from Him on the battlefield of Kurukṣetra.

Āśrama—the four spiritual orders of Vedic society: celibate student, householder, retired, and renounced.

Aṣṭāṅga-yoga—the eight-step process of mystic meditation taught by Patañjali.

Avatāra—a “descent,” an appearance of the Supreme Lord in this world.

B

Bhagavad-gītā—the discourse between the Supreme Lord, Kṛṣṇa, and His devotee Arjuna expounding devotional service as both the principal means and the ultimate end of spiritual perfection.

Bhakti-yoga—the process of reestablishing one’s personal relationship with the Supreme Lord by devotional service.

Brahmacārī—one in the first order of spiritual life, a celibate student.

Brahman—the Absolute Truth; especially the impersonal aspect of the Absolute.

Brāhmaṇa—a member of the intelligent and priestly class.

C

Caitanya Mahāprabhu—Lord Kṛṣṇa Himself, appearing as the special incarnation for this age and the deliverer of the process of chanting the Supreme Lord’s holy names.

Causal Ocean—the corner of the spiritual universe in which the Lord in His form as Mahā-Viṣṇu lies down to create the entirety of material universes.
Daridra-narayana—"poor Nārāyaṇa," a misconception of impersonalists that the common man is equal to God.

Dhyāna-yoga—the process of linking with the Supreme by meditating on the Supersoul in the heart.

Dvāpara-yuga—the third in the cycle of four ages. See also: Yugas

Go1oka Vrndāvana—the highest spiritual planet, Lord Kṛṣṇa’s personal abode.

Gopīs—Kṛṣṇa’s cowherd girl friends, His most confidential devotees.

Gosvāmis, the six—Rūpa, Sanātana, Raghunātha dāsa, Gopāla Bhaṭṭa, Raghunātha Bhaṭṭa, and Jīva Gosvāmis, immediate followers of Lord Caitanya Mahāprabhu who were empowered by Him to establish the preaching of His movement all over the world.

Govinda—Lord Kṛṣṇa, the giver of pleasure to the cows, the land, and the senses.

Gṛhaustha—a householder, member of the second spiritual order of Vedic society.

Hari-nāma—the holy name of the Supreme Lord Hari (Kṛṣṇa).

Hātha-yoga—See: Aṣṭāṅga-yoga

Jagannātha—the Supreme Lord Viṣṇu appearing in His Deity form in the city of Puri in Orissa. The worshipable Deity of Lord Caitanya Mahāprabhu.

Jñāna-yoga—the process of linking with the Supreme by cultivation of knowledge.

Jñānis—those who practice jñāna-yoga.

Kali-yuga—the current age of quarrel, begun 5,000 years ago and scheduled to last 427,000 more years.

Karma-yoga—the process of linking with the Supreme by surrendering the results of fruitive work.

Kirtana—the devotional process of chanting; glorification of the holy names of the Supreme Lord.

Kṛṣṇaloka—See: Goloka Vrndāvana

Kṣatriyas—warriors and administrators, the second occupational order of Vedic society.

Mahā-mantra—the great chanting for deliverance:

Hare Kṛṣṇa, Hare Kṛṣṇa, Kṛṣṇa Kṛṣṇa, Hare Hare
Hare Rāma, Hare Rāma, Rāma Rāma, Hare Hare

Mantra—a Vedic sound vibration that can deliver the mind from illusion.

Māyā—the material energy, the Supreme Lord’s deluding potency.

Mrdanga—an oblong clay drum used in congregational chanting of the Lord’s holy names.

Nṛsiṁhadeva—the appearance of Lord Viṣṇu as half-lion, half-man to protect His devotee Prahlāda and kill the demon Hiranyakasipu.

Oṁ(kāra)—the sacred seed-syllable in the Vedas which is the compact representation of the Absolute Truth.

Prema-bhakti—perfected devotional service on the platform of pure ecstatic love of God.

Radha—the personal consort of Lord Kṛṣṇa, His internal pleasure potency.

Rāma—the Supreme Lord, who is the reservoir of all pleasure.

Rāmānuja-cārya—the great Vaiṣṇava spiritual master who re-established the ancient line of disciplic succession from the
The goddess of fortune (Śrī-sampradāya) in this age.

Rasagullās—curd balls boiled in sugar juice.

S
Samosās—deep-fried vegetable pies.
Śāṅkhya-yoga—the process of linking with the Supreme by intellectually tracing out the source of creation.
Śaṅkirtana—See: Kīrtana
Sannyāsī—one in the renounced order of life, the highest of the four spiritual divisions of Vedic society.
Śāstras—revealed scriptures.
Satya-yuga—the first and purest in the cycle of four ages. See also: Yugas
Śrīmad-Bhāgavatam—the “spotless Purāṇa,” which presents the entire science of God consciousness, without any tinge of material religiosity.
Surabhi—the cows of the spiritual world, which can be milked to yield any desire.
Śyāmasundara—the “dark, beautiful boy” of Vṛndāvana, Lord Kṛṣṇa.

T
Tretā-yuga—the second in the cycle of four ages. See also: Yugas

V
Vaiṣṇavas—worshipers of the Supreme Lord, Viṣṇu.
Vedas—the original revealed scriptures.
Viṣṇu—the Supreme Lord in His opulent feature as the Lord of Vaikuṇṭha.
Viṣṇu-mūrti—the personal form of Lord Viṣṇu.
Vṛndāvana—the village in which Lord Kṛṣṇa enacts His most intimate pastimes. See also: Goloka Vṛndāvana

Y
Yogi—one who has achieved, or is striving for, union with the Supreme.
Yugas—the four great ages of universal time, which occur in repeated cycles of 4,320,000 years.

Guide to Sanskrit Pronunciation

Throughout the centuries, the Sanskrit language has been written in a variety of alphabets. The mode of writing most widely used throughout India, however, is called devanāgarī, which means, literally, the writing used in “the cities of the demigods.” The devanāgarī alphabet consists of forty-eight characters, including thirteen vowels and thirty-five consonants. Ancient Sanskrit grammarians arranged the alphabet according to practical linguistic principles, and this order has been accepted by all Western scholars. The system of transliteration used in this book conforms to a system that scholars in the last fifty years have accepted to indicate the pronunciation of each Sanskrit sound.

The short vowel a is pronounced like the u in but, long ā like the a in far, and short i like the i in pin. Long i is pronounced as in pique, short u as in pull, and long ū as in rule. The vowel ī is pronounced like the ri in rim. The vowel e is pronounced as in they, ai as in aisle, o as in go, and au as in how. The anusvara (rh), which is a pure nasal, is pronounced like the n in the French word bon, and visarga (ḥ), which is a strong aspirate, is pronounced as a final h sound. Thus ah is pronounced like aha, and ī like ihi.

The guttural consonants—k, kh, g, gh, and ū—are pronounced from the throat in much the same manner as in English. K is pronounced as in kite, kh as in Eckhart, g as in give, gh as in dig hard, and ū as in sing. The palatal consonants—c, ch, j, jh, and ū—are pronounced from the palate with the middle of the tongue. C is pronounced as in chair, ch as in staunch-heart, j as in joy, jh as in hedgehog, and ū as in canyon. The cerebral consonants—ṭ, ṭh, ḍ, dh, and ṇ—are pronounced with the tip of the tongue turned up and drawn back against the dome of the palate.
THE PATH OF PERFECTION

T is pronounced as in tub, th as in light-heart, d as in dove, dh as in red-hot, and n as in nut. The dental consonants—t, th, d, dh, and n—are pronounced in the same manner as the cerebrals, but with the forepart of the tongue against the teeth. The labial consonants—p, ph, b, bh, and m—are pronounced with the lips. P is pronounced as in pine, ph as in uphill, b as in bird, bh as in rubbing, and m as in mother. The semivowels—y, r, l, and v—are pronounced as in yes, run, light, and vine respectively. The sibilants s, sh, and s—are pronounced, respectively, as in the German word sprechen and the English words shine and sun. The letter h is pronounced as in home.

Index

A

Abhyâsa-tva kauânteya
verse quoted, 94–95
Abraham-bhuvânal lokâh
verse quoted, 135
Absolute Truth

cognizant, 41, 42
everything comes from, 28–29, 41
Krsna as, 41–42
living entity contrasted to, 42
See also: God; Krsna, Lord (Supreme Personality of Godhead); Reality

Activity

in Krsna consciousness, 1, 6–9, 21, 50, 64–65, 73, 79, 87, 95, 107
living entity must have, 17–18
material, yogi ceases, 14–15
material & spiritual, 5, 64–65
pious, 16, 104, 111, 117
positive & negative, 7–8
for self or Supreme, 1
sinful, 35, 105
See also: Work

Adhyâsâ-pûrvaṁ hṛśito 'smi drśtvā
verse quoted, 115

Advancement, spiritual

by faith, 71–72
by impersonal meditation, 96
in Krsna consciousness, 71, 79, 103–4, 140, 152
sign of, 35
See also: Godhead, returning to

Age, present. See: Kali-yuga (present Age)

Agni-hatra yajñas (fire sacrifices), 2

Agni iyotir ahaḥ suklaḥ
verse quoted, 149

Ahaituky apratihatā
quoted, 109
verse quoted, 33–34, 108–9
Air & consciousness, analogy of, 101–2
Air India, purchasing ticket on, example of, 145

Ajo niyâh sâsvato 'yam purâno
verse quoted, 32–33, 123

Ajo 'pi sann avayâtmā
quoted, 32

Albert Einstein, 145

Amâra aññāya guru haṇā tāra' ei deśa
verse quoted, 36

Ambariśa Mahârâja, 20, 60–61

America, United States of

car & body, 56
cataracts & imperfect senses, 29
candle (original) & Krsna, 94
cloud & mahat-tattva, 140

defense force of, 49–50
Indian yogi in, 72
President of, example of, 113–14, 147
standard of life in, 16
yoga societies in, 38

Analogies

air & consciousness, 101–2
astronauts aloft & impersonalists merged, 126
awakening from sleep & chanting Hare Krsna, 144
body's parts & Supreme's parcels, 1, 110
candle (original) & Krsna, 94
car & body, 56
cataracts & imperfect senses, 29
chariot & body, 19
cloud & mahat-tattva, 140

Index
Analogies

- criminal & fallen living entity, 110–11
- doctor & advanced devotee, 35
doctor’s prescription & Vedic literature, 28
dress & body, 54
elevator & bhakti-yoga, 111–12
father & God, 109, 110
finger of body & servants of Kṛṣṇa, 6
fire & Kṛṣṇa consciousness, 79
flame’s energy & Kṛṣṇa’s energy, 80
frog in well & philosophers, 129
hand of body & parts of Supreme, 54
head of body & parts of Supreme, 54
hunger” satisfied & self realized, 76, 146
importance of, 103
iron in fire & body in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, 4–5
king’s daughter & surrendered soul, 66
crime & fallen living entity. 110–11
doctor & advanced devotee, 35
doctor’s prescription & Vedic literature, 28
dress & body, 54
elevator & bhakti-yoga, 111–12
father & God, 109, 110
finger of body & servants of Kṛṣṇa, 6
fire & Kṛṣṇa consciousness, 79
flame’s energy & Kṛṣṇa’s energy, 80
frog in well & philosophers, 129
hand of body & parts of Supreme, 54
head of body & parts of Supreme, 54
hunger” satisfied & self realized, 76, 146
importance of, 103
iron in fire & body in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, 4–5
king’s daughter & surrendered soul, 66
missionary & devotee of Kṛṣṇa, 78
mother & Vedas, 53
mother serving child & devotee serving Kṛṣṇa, 108
ocean & spiritual bliss, 10–11
ocean rescue & Kṛṣṇa consciousness, 144
oil in water & spirit in matter, 4
policeman shooting & universal form, 116
protected patient & surrendered soul, 65
seeing sun & seeing Supreme, 69
staircase & yoga system, 111
submissive son & surrendered soul, 66
sun & Kṛṣṇa, 19, 22, 54, 147
sun rising & God revealing Himself, 31
sun’s reflections & Supersoul’s expansions, 86–87

THE PATH OF PERFECTION

Analogies

- vulture & sense enjoiner, 56
- wind & mind, 8
- See also: “compared to” entries under headings that have them
- Ānanda-cinmaya-rasa-pratibhāvidābhī
ger verse quoted, 10
- Ānanda defined, 9, 29
- Ānanda-maya defined, 9
- Ānandamaya śīvāṣāśana verse quoted, 9
- Ānandāmbudhi-varthanam pratipadāṁ quoted, 11
- Ananyo-cetāṁ sataṁ quoted, 128
- Anārāma-jusām asvargam verse quoted, 7
- Anāśriṛtaḥ karma-phalam verse quoted, 1–2
- Anātmanas tu śārutvē verse quoted, 25
- Anātmanā-sita-paramānā-cayāntara-satham quoted, 79
- Anēka-jamna-saṁsiḍhas verse quoted, 102
- Angāni yasya sakalendriyavṛttimanti quoted, 31
- Anger, 75
- Animals, humans privileged above, 89, 134
- Anxiety, 49–50
- See also: Fear; Misery
- Apāṇi-pādo javano gṛhitā quoted, 30
- Apāṣyata puruṣaṁ pūrṇam verse quoted, 22–23
- Aprāpya yoga-saṁsiḍhīṁ verse quoted, 97
- Apratīṣṭho mahā-bhāgo verse quoted, 99
- Arcanam vandanaṁ dāsyaṁ quoted, 44
- Arjuna cited on mind, 8
- God realized by, 130
- Kṛṣṇa chastised, 55–56

Index

Arjuna
Kṛṣṇa inspired, to fight, 6–7
as Kṛṣṇa’s friend, 148
quoted on deviation from Transcendence, 99
quoted on failure in self-realization, 97
quoted on Kṛṣṇa dispelling doubt, 99
quoted on universal form, 115
quoted on yogasystem, 8, 91
universal form seen by, 115, 116
yogasystem rejected by, 8, 91–92
Aroha-panthāprocess, 130
Arūḍhas kṛṣṭīkhyena param padam tataḥ verse quoted, 126
Ārurukṣor muneṇ yo gaham verse quoted, 14
Asaṁsayaṁ mahā-bhāho verse quoted, 94–95
Asaṁyadāmanā yo gaham verse quoted, 95
Asana system, 14
Asanapi kleśāda āsya dehaḥ quoted, 56
Asārdefined, 56
Āśīśya vā pāda-ratāṁ pinaṣṭu māṁ quoted, 34–35
Association
- consciousness according to, 101–2
- importance of, 103
- with Kṛṣṇa by chanting His names, 151–52
with Kṛṣṇa’s devotees, 32, 102
Astāṅga-yoga, 45, 91–92, 98, 111
Astrologers, calculations of, at birth &
deadth, 149
Astronauts aloft & impersonalists merged, analogy of, 126
Aṣṭāvas māyā tāre deya saṁsāra-dukkha verse quoted, 25
Aṭṭaṁ sri-krṣṇa-nāmādi quoted, 29
Aṭṭaṁ sri-krṣṇa-nāmad quoted, 27, 143
Aṭṭha vā yogināṁ eva verse quoted, 100
Atheism, 145, 146
See also: Impersonalism

Ātmā defined, 18–19
See also: Soul
Ātmavya hy dimaṇ bandhur verse quoted, 18
Ātmasamsthānam maṇah kṛtvā verse quoted, 69
Ātmavypmanyena sarvatra verse quoted, 88–89
Atom, Kṛṣṇa in, 79
Attachments, material, 27
See also: Bodily concept; Desires, material
Author, the (A. C. Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda)
in Calcutta bombing (1942), 116
son of, question of, 151
in Vṛndāvana, always, 128
Authority, spiritual
- knowledge from, 43, 53, 130, 145
See also: Spiritual master
Avaḥjānti defined, 110–11
Avaroha-panthā process, 130–31
Avināśī tu tad viṣṇu verse quoted, 143
Avaṁkta defined, 140, 142, 143
Avaṁkta vyaktayaṁ sarvaḥ verse quoted, 138
Avaṁkta hi gatir dukkhaṁ verse quoted, 96
Avaṁkta kṣara ity utkās verse quoted, 142
Awakening from sleep & chanting Hare
Kṛṣṇa, analogy of, 144
Ayaṁti śraddhāyopeto verse quoted, 97
Ayi nanda-tanuja kīkaraṁ verse quoted, 115, 144

Baladeva Vidyābhūṣaṇa, cited on passing away & returning, 150
Bālaṁya neha sarasāṁ pitalau nṛsinha quoted, 65
THE PATH OF PERFECTION

*Bhagavad-gītā, quotations from*

- on embodied soul, sense enjoyment, & higher taste, 146
- on failure in self-realization, 97
- on God at death, 121–22
- on great souls attaining perfection, 133
- on impersonal meditation, 95–96
- on knowers of Supreme Brahman passing away, 149
- on knowing Kṛṣṇa's advent & activities, 106
- on knowledge joyfully realized, 76
- on Kṛṣṇa as seed-giving father, 52
- on Kṛṣṇa dispelling doubts, 99
- on Kṛṣṇa in water, light, sound, & ability, 80
- on Kṛṣṇa revealing knowledge of Himself, 44
- on Kṛṣṇa's abode, 52, 142
- on Kṛṣṇa's impartiality & favoritism, 66
- on learned words & lamentation, 55
- on living entities as Lord's parts & parcels, 65
- on Lord as all-pervading, in His abode, & attained by pure devotion, 147
- on Lord in heart, 86
- on Lord known by devotional service, 44, 112
- on material world as place of misery, 135
- on millenial cosmic manifestations, 85
- on mind, control of, 73, 94, 95
- on mind, Supersoul, & tranquillity, 26
- on mind as friend or enemy, 18, 25
- on mind fixed on Self, 69
- on mystic passing away & returning, 150
- on mystic transcendentalist attaining God's kingdom, 48
- on nature, material & transcendental, 139
- on offerings acceptable to God, 30
- on om, God, & spiritual planets, 124
- on one seeing Kṛṣṇa everywhere never lost, 81
- on passing away, two ways of, 150
- on perfect yogi, 88–89
- on pious persons determined in devotional service, 104
- on preacher devotee, 70–71
- on remembering Kṛṣṇa & obtaining Him, 128
- on renunciation as yoga, 13
- on samādhi (trance), 63–64
- on self-realization, person established in, 26
- on soul pervading body, 143
- on soul's eternity, 32–33, 123
- on spiritual identity, 4
- on spiritually advanced person, 35
- on temperate habits, 51, 57
- on times to pass away from world, 149
- on transcendentalist not overcome by evil, 100
- on transcendentalist perfecting consciousness from previous life, 100–101
- on transcendentalist's mind fixed on Supreme Self, 36, 63
- on transcendently situated person, 146
- on universal form, 115
- on work & renunciation, 1–2
- on yoga & sex, 47
- on yoga as detachment from sensual engagements, 121
- on yoga joyfully performed, 9
- on yoga system, neophyte & perfectional stages of, 14
- on yoga system as impractical & unendurable, 91
- on yoga with determination, 67
- on yogi, highest, 107
- on yogi, unsuccessful, 100
- on yogi attaining yoga, 60
- on yogi knowing Supersoul, 84
- on yogi practicing to perfection, 102
- on yogi seeing Kṛṣṇa everywhere, 78
- on yogi's greatness, 106
- on yogi's happiness, 77
- on yogi's renunciation, 15

Index

*Bhagavad-gītā, quotations from*

- on yogi's sitting place, 37–38
- Bhagavān. See: Kṛṣṇa, Lord
- Bhāgavata. See: Srimad-Bhāgavatam
- Bhājate defined, 107
- Bhakti defined, 21, 117
- See also: Devotional service; Kṛṣṇa, love for
- Bhakti-pareṣārbhavo viraktir anyatra ca quoted, 145
- Bhakti-mayi param kṛtvā verse quoted, 70
- Bhakti-rasāmṛta-sindhu quoted on devotee as liberated, 87
- Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda, A. C. (the author) in Calcutta bombing (1942), 116
- son of, question of, 151
- in Vṛndāvana always, 128
- Bhakti-yogīs. See: Devotees
- Bhakti-yoga blissful, 9, 11
- "chance" destiny not in, 151
- compared to elevator, 111–12
- completed in this life, 118–19
- as descending process, 43
- easy for everyone, 93–94
- in essence, 2
- God as goal of, 117–18
- in Kṛṣṇa Consciousness movement, 48
- Kṛṣṇa obtained via, 129
- perfection by, 106–7, 111
- practical for present Age, 98
- process of, 6, 44–45
- as pure devotion, 112, 113
- as recreation, 9
- as servitor, served, & service, 118
- spiritual master in, 118
- success in, 68–69
- temple sacred in, 38
- See also: Devotional service; Kṛṣṇa consciousness
- Bhakti-yogena manasi verse quoted, 22–23
- Bhaktvā mām abhījayāti verse quoted, 44, 112

*Bhagavata-purāṇa, verse quoted, 22

Bandhayā visayāsāngi
verse quoted, 22

Bandhurāmāṁnas tasya
verse quoted, 25

Beings. See: Living entities

Belly, 75

Benedictions, 16–17

Bengali proverb, cited on test at death, 122

See also: Bhagavad-gītā, cited;

Bhagavad-gītā, quotations from

- as authority, 145
- ever fresh, 60
- first instruction of, 55, 97
- God's greatness known via, 118
- as inspiration to serve Kṛṣṇa, 6–7
- knowledge by hearing, 140
- known by Kṛṣṇa consciousness, 32
- Kṛṣṇa speaks, 77, 145
- material & spiritual natures in, 139
- opportune instruction in, 89
- seeing Kṛṣṇa-via, 80–81
- spiritual sky in, 53
- yogi in, 1

Bhagavad-gītā, cited

- on big businessman, 15
- on eating too much or too little, 59
- on Kṛṣṇa providing for devotees, 5–6
- on mind difficult to control, 8
- on serving the senses, 115
- on yoga system, 1
- on yogi, highest, 107–8

Bhagavad-gītā, quotations from

- on Arjuna rejecting yoga system, 8
- on Arjuna's impurities, 7
- on asāṁta-yoga, 45
- on birth in good family, 118
- on Brahmā's day & night, 136–37, 138
- on demigod worship, 108
- on deviation from Transcendence, 99
- on devotee never perishing, 81
- on devotees knowing paths of passing away, 150–51
- on devotional service on Brahman platform, 87
- on eating & sleeping, 51

See also:

Bhakti-purāṇa, verse quoted, 22

Bhakti-yoga

See: Devotional service
THE PATH OF PERFECTION

Bhauma Vṛndāvana. See: Vṛndāvana (on Earth)

Bhaviṭa na ca me tasmād
verse quoted, 70–71

Bhayām dvitiyābhīvinivāsatāh syād
quoted, 46

Bṛhāmaṇa sarva-bhūtāni
verse quoted, 86

Bṛhu-vadhye prānām āveśya samyak
verse quoted, 121–22

Bhūta-grtumāḥ sa evāyaṁ
verse quoted, 138

Bible, quoted on body, 101

Bilvamāgala Tākhura, 118–19

Birth
horoscope at, 149
material or spiritual, 106
in rich family, 118
See also: Birth & death, repeated; Transmigration

Birth & death, repeated
on highest to lowest planet, 135–36
knowing Kṛṣṇa stops, 54
liberation from, 136
soul not subject to, 123
See also: Bondage, material; Transmigration

Bondage, material
by mind on sense objects, 21–22
getting one like God’s, 123–24
See also: Soul

Bondage, material
by mind on sense objects, 21–22
getting one like God’s, 123–24
See also: Soul

Brahmā, Lord
day & night of, 137, 138
Kṛṣṇa instructed, 41
lifetime of, 85–86, 137–38
planet of (Brahmaloka), 136, 137–38
quoted on Durgā, 116–17
Brahma-bhūtaḥ prasannāmā
quoted, 37
verse quoted, 146
Brahmacarya (celibate life), 46
See also: Detachment; Renunciation; Sannyāsī

Brahmājī (Brahma effulgence)
impersonalists in, 2, 125, 126
See also: Merging with the Supreme; Nirvāna; Void, the
Brahmaloka, 136, 137–38
Brahman, impersonal. See: Brahmājī; Merging with the Supreme

Brahman, Supreme
everything comes from, 41
knowers of, passing from world, 149–50
realization of, 146
See also: God; Kṛṣṇa, Lord (Supreme Personality of Godhead)

Bṛhmana, birth in family of, 118

Body, material
parts of, analogy of, 1, 110
preparing, for planetary transfer, 123
as pushing machine, 75
soul develops, 51–52
as soul’s disease, 54
soul sustains, 124
spirit in, 49, 139, 143
spiritualization of, 4–5
temporary, 49, 56, 143
in vulture analogy, 56
See also: Bodily concept; Senses

Body, spiritual
development of, 4–5
gaining one like God’s, 123–24
See also: Soul

Body, spiritual
development of, 4–5
gaining one like God’s, 123–24
See also: Soul

BṛhmatJa, Lord

Bṛhat-ntiradiya Purāṇa,
quoted on chanting Lord’s names in Kali-yuga, 38–39
British, Gandhi drove, from India, 46–47
Buddhists, 117, 145
Businessman, big, 15–16
See also: Materialists

C

Caitanya-caritāmṛta, quotations from
on instructing everyone on Kṛṣṇa, 36
on living entity in māyā, 25
Caitanya Mahāprabhu
chanting Hare Kṛṣṇa delivered by, 8, 76, 112, 113, 152
Caitanya Mahāprabhu quoted on pure love for Kṛṣṇa, 34–35
quoted on serving Kṛṣṇa again, 115, 144
Raghunātha dāsa’s prasāda pastime
with, 57–59
Rūpa & Sanātana under, 74
Rūpa Gosvāmi quoted on, 112
Calcutta (1942), bombing of, 116
Caitalām hi manah kṛṣṇa
verse quoted, 94
Candle (original) & Kṛṣṇa, analogy of, 94
Candy, tasting, example of, 10
Car & body, analogy of, 56
Cat, devotees sees Kṛṣṇa in, 79
Cataracts & imperfect senses, analogy of, 29
Causal Ocean, 85, 137
Celibacy
determination by, 46–47, 67
See also: Detachment; Renunciation; Sannyāsī

Ceto-darpaṇa-mājanam
quoted, 145
Chance, devotee’s destiny not left to, 149–51

Chāndogya Upaniṣad, cited on passing away & returning, 150
Chanting (Hare Kṛṣṇa)
Caitanya delivered, 8, 76, 112, 113, 152
Caitanya quoted on, 93–94, 151–52
ever fresh, 60
fixes mind on Kṛṣṇa, 73, 94
ignorance removed by, 144
in Kali-yuga, 38–39, 76, 93–94, 111–12
knowledge by, 145
Kṛṣṇa consciousness by, 151
Kṛṣṇa’s association by, 129, 151–52
liberation by, 119
meaning of, 113
om included in, 124
perfection by, 76, 119
pleasure from, 11
purifying power of, 104
as recreation, 8–9
as safety, 152

Index

Brahman platform, 87–88
See also: Self-realization

Brahma-saṁhitā, quotations from
on devotees seeing God by love,
29–30, 83–84
on Durgā, 116–117
on Govinda’s blissful realm, 10
on Kṛṣṇa in atom, 79
on Kṛṣṇaloka, 127
on Lord in His abode & all-pervading,
53–54
on Lord’s form as eternity, bliss, & knowledge, 28, 29
on Lord’s senses, 30–31
on Mahā-Viṣṇu as Govinda’s plenary portion, 84–85
on yogī & jñānīs approaching Lord’s lotus feet, 130–31

Bṛhna-nārādyā Purāṇa,
quoted on chanting Lord’s names in Kali-yuga, 38–39

British, Gandhi drove, from India, 46–47
Buddhists, 117, 145
Businessman, big, 15–16
See also: Materialists

C

Caitanya-caritāmṛta, quotations from
on instructing everyone on Kṛṣṇa, 36
on living entity in māyā, 25
Caitanya Mahāprabhu
chanting Hare Kṛṣṇa delivered by, 8, 76, 112, 113, 152
Caitanya quoted on, 93–94, 151–52
ever fresh, 60
fixes mind on Kṛṣṇa, 73, 94
ignorance removed by, 144
in Kali-yuga, 38–39, 76, 93–94, 111–12
knowledge by, 145
Kṛṣṇa consciousness by, 151
Kṛṣṇa’s association by, 129, 151–52
liberation by, 119
meaning of, 113
om included in, 124
perfection by, 76, 119
pleasure from, 11
purifying power of, 104
as recreation, 8–9
as safety, 152
Chanting (Hare Kṛṣṇa) (continued) 
sinning after, 105
See also: Hare Kṛṣṇa mantra

Chariot & body, analogy of, 19
Cheaters & cheated, 47, 72-73, 96
Cheating in “Kṛṣṇa consciousness,” 105

Child
at kīrāṇa, 79, 93
mother telling, to sit still, example of, 7
restless, example of, 64
seeing shoe of, example of, 83
sex for begetting, 47
Christ, Jesus, 35, 70, 117
Christians, 101, 117-18

Cintīmati-prakara-sadmasu kalpa-vṛkṣa
verse quoted, 127

Cit-defined, 29
City, the, 38
Civilization, modern, 135
See also: Kali-yuga (present Age); Society, human

Cloud & mahā-bhūtāna, analogy of, 140
Comparisons. See: Analogies
Concentration. See: Meditation

Conditioned souls
on bodily platform, 88
contaminated desire of, 37
devotee compassionate to, 70
feared, 46
Gosvāmīs delivered, 82
in illusion, 23-24, 35
mind of, 18-19, 21-22
in modes of nature, 99
promoted to perfection, 117

Parānas for, 27
See also: Human life; Living entities; Materialists; Nondevotees

Confession, sinning after, 105

Consciousness
divinization of, 100-103
sleeping vs. spiritual, 144
See also: Knowledge; Kṛṣṇa consciousness; Soul, Spirit

Contamination, material, 103-5
See also: Attachments, material; Desires, material; Sin

Cosmic manifestation. See: Creation, the; Material world; Nature, material; Universe(s)

Cows, surabhi, 127

Creation, the
complete arrangement of, 119
material vs. spiritual, 139
See also: Material world; Nature, material; Universe(s)

Criminal & fallen living entity, analogy of, 110-11

Dancing, Kṛṣṇa conscious, 8-9
Danger, 152

Daridrā-nārāyana, 78

Darkness
māyā compared to, 19, 22-23
passing away in, 150
See also: Ignorance

Death
body after, 101
going to Kṛṣṇa at, 81, 128
on higher planets, 122-23
horoscope at, 149
scientists can’t stop, 128
soul not subject to, 123
time of, destinies at, 149-51
time of, test at, 121-22
unavoidable, 138
witness to, 143
See also: Birth & death, repeated; Transmigration

Deerskin yoga-āsana, 46

Demigods
Kṛṣṇa bewilders, 42
universal form feared by, 115
worship to, 108
See also: specific demigods

Desire
Kṛṣṇa fulfills, 131
to merge with God, 3
polluted vs. purified, 37
of pure devotee, 2-3, 3-4

See also: Love
Desires, material
demigod worship due to, 108
transcendentalist to reject, 36, 37
yogi free of, 16, 60, 61
See also: Attachments, material; Bodily concept; Lust; Sex life

Desire trees, 127

Detachment
from material enjoyment, 145-46
of yogi from sense activity, 121, 122
See also: Renunciation

Determination
by celibacy, 46-47, 67
in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, 67-68, 68-69, 72, 104
sparrow’s example of, 68

Devotee(s) of Kṛṣṇa (bhakta; bhakti-yogī; Vaiṣṇavas)
associating with, 32, 102
“chance” destiny not for, 149-51
classes of, 71-77
compared to missionary, 78
compassionate to conditioned souls, 70
“conquer” Kṛṣṇa by hearing of Him, 129, 130
demand nothing from Kṛṣṇa, 109
desire to serve Kṛṣṇa, 4, 114, 148
duality doesn’t affect, 26
higher planets disinterest, 122-23, 124
Kṛṣṇa provides for, 5-6
Kṛṣṇa reveals Himself to, 143
Kṛṣṇa’s relationship with, 83-84
liberation for, 87-88, 149
loves Kṛṣṇa, 83-84, 116
mercyful, 70
modes of nature surpassed by, 87
never perishes, 81
paths of passing away known to, 151
as preachers, 70-71, 72, 78
pure devotees, 2-3, 3-4, 35, 134, 148, 151
respectful, 116
see God by love, 29-30, 83-84
sees Kṛṣṇa in everything, 78-79, 82-83

Dharma defined, 108

Dhīra defined, 75

Dhruva Mahārāja, 16-17

Dhūma-rātīs tathā krṣṇah
verse quoted, 150

Dhyāna-yoga, 124

Dik-kālādy-anavacchinne
verse quoted, 88

Disciple & spiritual master, 118-19

Disease
by eating wrongly, 50-51
the material, 49, 54, 113-14

Diseased man, doctor restricting, example of, 146

Doctor
advanced devotee compared to, 35
restricting diseased man, example of, 146

Doctor’s prescription & Vedic literature, analogy of, 28
THE PATH OF PERFECTION

Enlightenment:
- material, detachment from, 145-46
- power of, limited, 15
- of sex, 47
- of soul & Supersoul, 65
- See also: Happiness; Peace; Pleasure; Satisfaction; Sense gratification

Enjoyment:
- material, detachment from, 145-46
- power of, limited, 15
- of sex, 47
- of soul & Supersoul, 65
- See also: Happiness; Peace; Pleasure; Satisfaction; Sense gratification

Earth planet:
- and water on, 139
- living entities on, 136
- as middle planet, 135
- Vrndavana on, 117, 128, 134
- See also: Material world

Eating:
- voracious vs. temperate, 50-51, 57, 59
- See also: Meat-eating; Prasada

Eightfold path. See: Astanga-yoga

Einstein, Albert, 145

Ekakya-yata-citatma
- verse quoted, 36

Ekamraksana sthito jagat
- quoted, 139

Ekakya yati anavrttim
- verse quoted, 150

Ekaccharadhya yo bhavadvat kaman
- quoted, 66, 109

Ekam pi san bahudhaya yo vabhati
- quoted, 88

Elements, material
- of body at death, 101
- See also: Matter; Nature, material

Elevator & bhakti-yoga, analogy of, 111-12

Empiricists. See: Philosophers; Scholars; Scientists

Energy of Krsna. See: Krsna, energy of

Enjoyment:
- living entities want, 125-26, 145

Faith, 71-72, 145

Fat, practicing yoga to reduce, 50, 98

Father:
- God compared to, 109, 110
- in knowledge example, 53

Fear:
- 46
- See also: Anxiety; Misery

Finger of body & servants of Krsna, analogy of, 6

Fire, iron in, & body in Krsna consciousness, analogy of, 4-5

Fire & Krsna consciousness, analogy of, 79

Fire sacrifices, 2

Flame's energy & Krsna's energy, analogy of, 80

Food offered to Krsna. See: Prasada

Ford, Mr., 113

Forest, 38

Freedom:
- from duality, 104
- by Krsna consciousness, 105
- by Krsna consciousness, 105
- from material existence, 54
- from misery, 64
- See also: Independence; Liberation

Frog in well & philosophers, analogy of, 129

Fruitive activities, 15-18
- See also: Pious activity

Fruitive workers, 150
- See also: Materialists

Gambling, 104-5

Gandhi, Mahatma, 46-47, 114

Ganges River, 38

Garhodakasayi Visnu, 86

Garuda, 68

Genitals, 75

Ghramam ca tat-pada-saroja-saurabhe
- verse quoted, 60-61

Goat sacrifice, 27-28

God:
- as adhoksaja, 34
- attaining to, after death, 121-22
- beyond experimental knowledge, 34, 53, 139-40
- as bhakti-yoga's goal, 117-18
- body of, 123
- compared to father, 109, 110
- complete creation by, 119
- devotional service reveals, 27, 31-32, 33, 34, 44, 131
- Dhrua saw, 16, 17
- eats, 30-31
- eternal, 32, 33
- fallen one's pain felt by, 110
- form(s) of, 28-29, 147-48
- great, 117-18
- independent, 41, 42
- kingdom of. See: Kingdom of God
- knows everything, 42

Godhead, returning to
- by Krsna consciousness, 102
- by purification, 106
- qualification for, 103
- See also: Advancement, spiritual; Kingdom of God

“God helps those who help themselves,” 6, 69

God realization:
- by hearing from realized source, 129, 130
- satisfaction of, 17, 146
- stages of, 117-18
- as unconditional, 33
- See also: Krsna consciousness

Gold, buying, searching for truth compared to, 31

Goloka eva nivasaty akhila?a-bhuta
- quoted, 53, 54
- verse quoted, 10

Goloka Vrndavana, 11, 53, 106, 110, 117, 134, 136

INDEX

Fortune, goddesses of, 127

Freedom:
- from duality, 104
- by Krsna consciousness, 105
- by Krsna consciousness, 105
- from material existence, 54
- from misery, 64
- See also: Independence; Liberation

Frog in well & philosophers, analogy of, 129

Fruitive activities, 15-18
- See also: Pious activity

Fruitive workers, 150
- See also: Materialists

Gambling, 104-5

Gandhi, Mahatma, 46-47, 114

Ganges River, 38

Garhodakasayi Visnu, 86

Garuda, 68

Genitals, 75

Godhead, returning to
- by Krsna consciousness, 102
- by purification, 106
- qualification for, 103
- See also: Advancement, spiritual; Kingdom of God

“God helps those who help themselves,” 6, 69

God realization:
- by hearing from realized source, 129, 130
- satisfaction of, 17, 146
- stages of, 117-18
- as unconditional, 33
- See also: Krsna consciousness

Gold, buying, searching for truth compared to, 31

Goloka eva nivasaty akhila?a-bhuta
- quoted, 53, 54
- verse quoted, 10

Goloka Vrndavana, 11, 53, 106, 110, 117, 134, 136
## THE PATH OF PERFECTION

### Health, good, 56–57, 59

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hearing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>God realization by, 129, 130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of Hare Kṛṣṇa, 119, 144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knowledge by, 53, 130, 140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of Kṛṣṇa’s name, 104</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Heart, Lord in, 86–87, 88–89 |
| Hindu verse, quoted on Kali-yuga people, 72 |

| Gopi-bhava-rasamritabhdhi-lahari-quoted, 82 |
| verse quoted, 81–82 |

| Gopis defined, 8, 82 |
| translated as, 8, 82 |

| Gopas (Kṛṣṇa’s friends), 117 |
| Gopi-bluii’O-rastimrtibhadrinahari-quoted, 82 |
| verse quoted, 81–82 |

| Government |
| in criminal–fallen-living-entity analogy, 110–11 |
| See also: Civilization; Society, human |

### Government

| Govindam adi-purusam tam aham bhajami quoted, 85 |
| Gunaś defined, 8 |
| See also: Modes of nature |

| Guru. See: Spiritual master. |
| Guru Mahārāja (of author), quoted on seeing God, 131 |

### Hand of body & parts of Supreme, analogy of, 54

| Happiness |
| by bhakti-yoga, 9 |
| in eternal life, 97 |
| by Kṛṣṇa consciousness, 66, 152 |
| transcendental, 64 |
| of yogi, 77 |
| See also: Enjoyment; Peace; Pleasure; Satisfaction; Sense gratification |

| Hare defined, 113, 144 |
| Hare Kṛṣṇa mantra, 72, 129, 144, 152 |
| See also: Chanting (Hare Kṛṣṇa) |

| Hare Kṛṣṇa movement. See: Kṛṣṇa consciousness movement |
| Harer nāma harer nāma verse quoted, 38–39, 93–94 |

| Hate, advanced devotee free of, 35 |

| Illusion |
| conditioned soul in, 23–24, 35 |
| vs. self-realization, 98–99 |
| of thinking oneself God, 113–14 |
| See also: Bodily concept; Ignorance; Māyā |

| Impersonalism, 145, 146, 148 |
| See also: Atheism; Materialism; Merging with the Supreme; Nirvāna; Void, the |

| Impersonalists |
| in brahma-jyoti, 125, 126 |
| Brahman goal of, 2 |
| desire of, 4 |
| fall back to material world, 126 |
| God formless to, 28–29 |
| imagine Viṣṇu form, 124 |
| universal form interests, 115, 116 |
| See also: Buddhists; Materialists; Voidists |

| Incarnation of Godhead |
| Caitanya as, 112, 152 |
| See also: Kṛṣṇa, advent of |

| India |
| astrologers in, 149 |
| disposing of dead body in, 101 |
| Gandhi drove British from, 46–47 |
| Gandhi killed in, 114 |
| sacred places in, 38 |
| standard of life in, 16 |
| yogis in, 38, 46, 72 |

| Indriyāṇi parāṇya dhūr quoted, 20–21 |
| Induction, knowledge by, 43 |
| Initiation, spiritual |
| in Society for Kṛṣṇa consciousness, 104–5 |
| See also: Advancement, spiritual |

| Intelligence |
| soul above, 21 |
| See also: Consciousness; Knowledge |

| International Society for Krishna Consciousness (ISKCON). See: Kṛṣṇa consciousness movement |

| Intoxication, 104–5, 135 |
| Īśvarah paramah kṛṣṇah quoted, 28, 29, 123 |
| Īśvarah sarva-bhūtānāṁ verse quoted, 86 |

### Index

| Jagannātha-prasāda, 58, 59 |
| Jagannātha Purī, 57, 58 |
| Janmādy āsya yatāḥ quoted, 28, 41, 43 |
| Janmādy āsya yāto 'nmayād verse quoted, 41–42 |
| Janma karma ca me divyam verse quoted, 106 |
| Jesus Christ, 35, 70, 117 |
| Jīnāsūri api yogasya verse quoted, 101 |
| Jītāmāna prāsāntasya verse quoted, 26 |
| Jīva Gosvāmī, 82 |
| Jñāna-vijñāna-trīpaṭāmā verse quoted, 26 |
| Jñāna-yoga, 41, 43, 98, 111, 122 |
| Jñāne prayāsasam udapāsya namanta eva verse quoted, 129 |
| Jñānis, 3, 43, 131 |
| See also: Philosophers |

| Kaccin nobhaya-vibhraṣṭas verse quoted, 99 |
| Kadāhām aikāntika-niya-kīkaraḥ quoted, 66 |
| Kalau nāsty eva nāsty eva verse quoted, 38–39, 93–94 |
| Kāli, goddess, goat sacrifice to, 27–28 |
| Kali-yuga (present Age) |
| bhakti-yoga for, 98 |
| chanting Lord’s names in, 38–39, 76, 93–94, 104, 111–12 |
| characteristics & duration of, 137 |
Kali-yuga (continued)

cheaters & cheated in, 72-73
life’s aim forgotten in, 136
life span in, 92, 93
yoga in, 1, 92-94
Kalki-avatāra, 137
Kalpa defined, 137
Kalpa-kṣaye punas tāni, 85
Kalpa-veṣṇa trees, 127
Kāma tais tair hṛta-jayah verse quoted, 108
Kāma ca dasye na tu kāma-kāmyā verse quoted, 60-61
Kapiladeva, Lord, 48
Kṣaera harer mandira-mājanādiśu verse quoted, 60-61
Karma. See: Activity; Transmigration; Work
Karma-yoga, 1, 111
Kārmībhyaś cādhika yogi verse quoted, 106
Kṣaera Upanisad, quoted on chief eternal of all eternals, 69
Kuṁjeya praṭijānīhi quoted, 81
Kennedy, President J.F., 49, 114
Kingdom of God
description of, 52
entering into, 112
knowledge of, 53
pure, 103
returning to. See: Godhead, returning to
transcendentalist attains, 48
yogenreaches, 53
See also: Goloka Vṛndāvana; Kṛṣṇa, abode of; Kṛṣṇaloka; Spiritual world
Kṛṣṇa, children at, 79, 93
Kṛṣṇanām defined, 44
Klesa 'dhiкалātras tēsām quoted, 64
verse quoted, 96
Knowing father & knowing God, analogy of, 140
Knowledge
academic, Kṛṣṇa not known by, 32, 33

Knowledge
ascending & descending processes of, 43, 130-31
by chanting Hare Kṛṣṇa, 145
experimental, God beyond, 34, 53, 139-40
by hearing from authority, 53, 130, 140
“king” of, 76
senses for gathering, 143-44
transcendental, 33, 53
ultimate, 43
See also: Absolute Truth; Consciousness; Philosophy; Self-realization

Krishna. See: Kṛṣṇa
Kṛṣṇā tava pāda-gānīkajā-verse quoted, 115, 144
Kṛṣṇa, Lord (Supreme Personality of Godhead)
abode of, 142, 147
absolute nature of, 151-52
as Absolute Truth, 41-42
activities of, 8
advent of, 128, 134
as Ajita, 129
all-pervading & aloof, 53-54, 79, 147
all-powerful, 151
Arjuna chastised by, 55-56
Arjuna friend of, 148
Arjuna inspired to fight by, 6-7
Arjuna realized God via, 130
associating with, by chanting His names, 151-52
in atom, 79
beyond sense perception, 27, 29, 143-144
Bhagavat-gītā spoken by, 77, 145
blissful, 9, 10
as cause of all causes, 41
cited
on eating too much or too little, 59
on Kṛṣṇa providing for devotees, 5-6
on mind, 19
on miserable material world, 134
on nature, material & spiritual, 140-41

Krṣṇa, Lord
cited
on times to leave body, 149
on transcendental path, 98
on yoga system, 1
on yogi, highest, 107-8
See also: Bhagavad-gītā, cited;
Bhagavad-gītā, quotations from; Kṛṣṇa, quoted
compared to original candle, 94
compared to sun, 19, 22, 54, 147
as “conquered” by pure devotion, 129
as controller, 113
as creator, maintainer, annihilator, 85-86
dances, 8, 9
demand nothing from, 109
demigods bewildered by, 42
desire fulfilled by, 131
desire to serve, 37
devotees of. See: Devotees
devotional service to. See: Bhakti-yoga; Devotional service
doubt dispelled by, 99
Durgā directed by, 117
energy of
creation, maintenance, & annihilation by, 85-86
Durgā (Māyā) as, 116-17
everything as, 82-83
external, 23
Hare as, 113
as Kṛṣṇa, 80
material vs. spiritual, 5
three types of, 80
evils no one, 66
eternal associates of, 117
exists everywhere, 11, 78-84
faith in, 72, 145
as father of all, 52, 66
food offered to. See: Prasāda
forgetting Him, 55, 78, 79
form(s) of, 28, 29, 115-16
friends of, 117
gopis’ love for, 82
as Govinda, 117, 127
hankering after, 131

Krṣṇa, Lord
hearing name of, 104
in heart of all, 86-87, 88-89
as Hṛṣīkeśa, 21
impartial but favors devotees, 66
imperceptible of, 125, 126
imperceptible sound of, 124
inconceivable, 131
instructing everyone on, 36
as Jagadīśa, 113
as Kalki-avatāra, 137
kingdom of. See: Kingdom of God
knowledge about, birth-death cycle ended by, 54, 106
known by devotional service, 27, 44
known by His grace, 32
known by Kṛṣṇa consciousness, 129-30, 131, 134, 135
in light of sun & moon, 80-81
living entities part of, 1, 25, 54, 65, 78-79, 82-83, 110
living entities sons of, 66
love for
Caitanya gives, 112
in devotee, 83-84
in gopīs, 82
as pure love, 108
universal love by, 83
See also: Devotional service; Love for God
Māyā directed by, 117
meditation on, 41-42, 47-48, 50, 63-64, 88, 95, 96
mind fixed on, 19-20, 36-37, 50, 54, 69, 73, 94, 96, 128
name(s) of, 104, 113, 144, 151-52
as Nanda’s son, 115, 144
as original form of God, 45, 94
pastimes of, 8, 117
pictures of, 10
planet of. See: Goloka Vṛndāvana; Kṛṣṇaloka
as pleasure reservoir, 123-24, 127
praying to, 117
protection by, 6, 65-66, 66-67
### THE PATH OF PERFECTION

**Krṣṇa, Lord (continued)**
- quoted on Arjuna’s impurities, 7
- on Brahma-loka & birth-death cycle, 135–36
- on devotee never perishing, 81
- on impersonal meditation, 95–96
- on knowledge joyfully realized, 76
- on Krṣṇa as seed-giving father, 52
- on Krṣṇa in water, light, sound, & ability, 80
- on Krṣṇa revealing knowledge of Himself, 44
- on Krṣṇa’s abode, 142
- on Krṣṇa’s impartiality & favoritism, 66
- on learned words & lamentation, 55
- on “Me,” 77
- on meditation’s goal, 48
- on mind, control of, 95
- on sādhu (trance), 63–64
- on transcendentalist not overcome by evil, 100
- on transcendentalist perfecting consciousness from previous life, 100–101
- on work & renunciation, 1–2
- on yogo & sex, 47
- on yogi, unsuccessful, 100
- on yogi’s greatness, 106, 107

**Krṣṇa bhulī’ seijim-anadi-bahir mukha verse quoted, 25**

**Krṣṇa consciousness**
- action in, 1, 6–9, 21, 64–65, 73, 79, 87, 95, 107
- advancement in, 71, 79, 103–4, 140, 152
- basis of, 82
- Bhagavad-gītā known by, 32
- body spiritualized by, 4–5
- by chanting Hare Krṣṇa, 151
- child in, 79
- compared to fire, 79
- compared to ocean rescue, 144
- determination in, 67–68, 68–69, 72, 104
- for direct contact to Supreme, 103–4, 111–12
- faith in, 71–72
- fearlessness by, 46
- freedom by, 105
- going to Godhead by, 102
- happiness by, 66, 152
- importance of, 136
- instruments for, 119
- knowingly or unknowingly partaken, 79
- Krṣṇa obtained via, 128–29, 131, 134, 135
- liberation by, 2, 22
- as love for Krṣṇa, 83
- love impossible without, 83
- material motive absent in, 109

**Index**

**Krṣṇa consciousness**
- material world transcended by, 106
- māya dispelled by, 22
- mind in, 22, 63, 69, 96
- misery ended by, 134, 135
- peace by, 50
- perfection of, 61, 108, 117, 135
- persons in. See: Devotees
- philosophy of, 22
- pious acts precede, 104
- pleasure in, 8–11
- prema of, 72, 78
- process of, 36, 143
- as purification, 21
- recreation in, 8–9
- relief by, 144
- satisfaction by, 146
- seeing God by, 31–32, 33
- as seeing Krṣṇa everywhere, 81
- self-realization by, 76
- self-realization surpassed by, 83
- vs. sense gratification, 18
- senses spiritualized by, 21
- sex life inferior to, 146
- sinning in name of, 105
- spiritual world via, 127, 128
- as yoga’s perfection, 18, 24, 54, 88, 96, 107

**Krṣṇa, Lord**
- thinking of, at death, 151
- universal form of, 115–16
- universe controlled by, 113
- as Viṣṇu’s origin, 45, 53, 84–85, 86, 94
- in Viṣṇu-dvāna, 128
- Vyāsa saw, 23
- in water’s taste, 80–81
- within & without, 147
- work for satisfying, 5
- as yoga’s objective, 50
- yoga system described by, 45
- yogi sees, everywhere, 78, 79–80

See also: God

**Krṣṇa bhulī’ seijim-anadi-bahir mukha verse quoted, 25**

**Krṣṇa consciousness**

See also: Bhagavad-gītā, cited; Bhagavad-gītā, quotations from; Krṣṇa, cited remembering Him, 81, 128, 151
- respect to, 116
- “rivals” of, 147
- sages bewildered by, 42
- scholars misunderstanding, 32
- seen by His grace, 32
- seen everywhere, 78–84
- service to. See: Bhaki-yoga; Devotional service
- spiritual, 144
- as Supersoul, 65
- surrenders to, 65–66
- as Śyāmasundara, 115, 116
- temple of, 38

**L**

- Ladder & yoga system, analogy of, 18
- Lakṣmi-sahasra-sata-sambhrama-verse quoted, 127
- Lamp in windless place & transcendentalist, analogy of, 63
- Liberated souls, 9, 147–48

See also: Devotees, pure devotees; Mahāmāta; Spiritual master

**Liberation**
- by bhakti-yoga, 94
- from birth-death cycle, 136
- at body’s demise, 148–49
- on Brahma platform, 87–88
- by chanting Hare Krṣṇa, 119
- of devotee, 149
- five kinds of, 147–48
- by Krṣṇa consciousness, 2, 22
- love for Krṣṇa surpasses, 83
- pure devotee uninterested in, 148
- yogīs demand, 113

See also: Freedom; Independence;
- Purification; Salvation

**Life**
- aim of, forgotten in this Age, 136
- of Brahmā, 85–86, 137–38
- perfection of, 121–22
- span of, in higher planets, 122–23, 136, 138
- span of, in yugas, 92, 93
- species of, 52, 55, 89

See also: Human life; Living entities;
- Material life; Soul; Spiritual life

**Life-force. See: Consciousness, Soul**
THE PATH OF PERFECTION

Lust

- demigod worship due to, 108
- See also: Desires, material; Sex life

M

- Machine’s part & Supreme’s servant, 66, 67
- analogy of, 15
- Mahā-mantra. See: Chanting (Hare Kṛṣṇa); Hare Kṛṣṇa mantra
- Mahārāja Nanda, 115, 144
- Mahātma (great soul), 134
- Mahat-tattva, defined, 140
- Mahā-Viṣṇu, 85-86
- Mamaivāmsa jīva-loke quoted, 65
- Mama janmani janmanīśvare quoted, 113
- verse quoted, 2, 112
- Mām ca yo ‘yaśāhicaśena
- verse quoted, 87
- Mām upetya punar janma
- verse quoted, 133
- Mām upetya tu kaunteya
- verse quoted, 135
- Mana eva manuṣyānāṁ
- verse quoted, 22
- Manah samāyama mac-citā
- verse quoted, 45
- Manasa-viśvadīra-grāmāṁ
- verse quoted, 67
- Mankind. See: Human life; Society, human
- Mantras
- for goat sacrifice, 28
- money in exchange for, 47, 72
- “private,” 72
- See also: Chanting (Hare Kṛṣṇa); Hare Kṛṣṇa mantra
- Mārkandeya Purāṇa
- cited on goat sacrifice to goddess Kāli, 27
- for ignorance mode, 27

Index

- Married girl & neophyte in Kṛṣṇa consciousness, analogy of, 67
- Material body. See: Body, material
- Material desires. See: Desires, material
- Materialists
- anxiety of, 49–50
- demands of, 113
- life’s aim forgotten by, 136
- See also: Conditioned souls; Imperialists; Nondevotees; Philosophers; Scientists, material
- Material life
- disentanglement from, 24
- entanglement in, 21–22
- freedom from, 54
- mind controls us in, 74
- miseries of, 125, 127–28
- yoga ends, 50
- See also: Bondage, material; Material world; Māya; Nature, material; Universe(s)
- Material world
- conditioned souls in, 35
- covering of, 139
- as creation for criminals, 110
- dangerous, 152
- dark, 142
- flux in, 138
- friends & enemies in, 35
- impersonalists fall back to, 126
- Kṛṣṇa consciousness frees one from, 106
- for Lord’s “rivals,” 147
- as material energy, 80
- miseries in, 133, 134–35
- nonpermanent nature of, 49
- pleasure in, 127
- sense gratification basis of, 35
- service in, 114
- spiritualization of, 5
- spiritual world vs., 4, 52–53, 127, 139–43, 147
- times to pass away from, 149–51
- yogīs never returning to, 133
- See also: Creation, the; Earth planet; Material life; Māya; Nature, material; Universe(s)

Matter, 4, 5
- See also: Elements, material; Material world; Nature, material
- Māya, 116–17
- Māya
- compared to darkness, 19, 22–23
- Kṛṣṇa consciousness dispels, 22
- living entity in, 25
- people in, 72
- service to, 114
- soul covered by, 24
- war against, 98–99
- See also: Illusion; Material world
- Modes of nature; Nature, material

Māyā ca tat-adāśrayam quoted, 22–23
- Māyāvāda philosophy, 148
- See also: Imperialism
- Māyāvādis. See: Impersonalists
- Meat-eating, 27–28, 50, 104–5
- Meditation
- asleep & awake, 45–46
- “fifteen-minute,” 75–76
- on Kṛṣṇa, 41–42, 47–48, 50, 63–64, 88, 95, 96
- as negating nonsense, 7
- perfection of, 8
- on Supreme Self, 36–37
- on Viṣṇu, 45, 47–48, 124
- on void, 95–96
- of yogī on Supersoul, 84, 86, 87
- See also: Praying; Trance; Yoga
- Men, all, are mortal, example of, 43
- Mental speculation
- God not known by, 43, 44, 145, 147
- See also: Imperialism
- Merging with the Supreme, 3, 148
- See also: Brahmajyoti; Imperialism
- Nirvāṇa: Void, the
- Metaphysics. See: Philosophy; Soul; Spiritual world
- Mind
- as binder or liberator, 22
- cleaning of, 145
- compared to chariot driver, 19
THE PATH OF PERFECTION

Philosophers
See also: Impersonalists; Jaina; Scholars; Scientists; Spiritual master

Philosophy
of Krsna consciousness, 22
MayaVaasa vs. Vaishnava, 148
speculative, 145
See also: Absolute Truth; Knowledge

Pilgrimage places, 38
Pious activity, 16, 104, 111, 117

Planets
created & destroyed continually, 138
higher, 122-23, 124, 135-38
living entities on, 136
in spiritual sky, 52, 122, 123-24, 139,
142, 147-48
in universe, 135-36
See also: Earth planet; Sun; Universal
verse(s)

Pleasure
in Krsna consciousness, 8-11
Krsna reservoir of, 123-24, 127
by love of God, 35
material vs. spiritual, 9-11, 126-27
real & unreal, 141
See also: Enjoyment; Happiness; Peace;
Satisfaction; Sense gratification

Policeman shooting & universal form,
analogy of, 116
Possessions
transcendentalist uninterested in, 36,
37
See also: Money

Power, mystic, 3
Power to earn vs. power to enjoy,
15-16
Prahlaada Maharaaja, 2-3, 49
Pranaav-sava-vedesa
verse quoted, 80
Prayapya punya-krtam lokan
verse quoted, 100
Prasada (food offered to Krsna)
devoteegiving, to cat, 79
as food transformed, 30
invitation to take, 79
of Jagannatha, 58, 59

Prasada
partaking of, 9
spiritual, 5
tongue controlled by, 20, 50
Prasanta-manasam hy enam
verse quoted, 77
Prasantaam vijata-bhir
verse quoted, 45
Prayaksavagamam dharmam
quoted, 94
verse quoted, 76
Prayapa-kale manasacalena
verse quoted, 121-22
Prayapa Yami tarin kalam
verse quoted, 149
Prayatnay yatamana tu
verse quoted, 102
Praying
as Caitanya taught, 144, 148
chanting Hare Krsna as, 144
to Krsna, 117
material vs. spiritual, 112-13
See also: Meditation

Prema-bhakti platform, 118
Premajana-churita-bhakti-viluckanena
quoted, 29-30
verse quoted, 83-84
Present Age. See: Kali-yuga (present Age)
President, United States
Kennedy, J.F., 49, 114
Nixon, 114
rivals of, example of, 147
trying to become, example of, 113-14
Prostitute in Bilvamangala story, 118-19
Paja defined, 28
Puranas, 27, 28

Purification
by chanting Hare Krsna, 104
of consciousness, 101-3
going to Godhead by, 106
by Krsna consciousness, 21
of mind, 145
sacrifices for, 2
of senses, 29-30, 31, 32
See also: Liberation

Purnam adah purnam idam
quoted, 119

Index

Prasada
partaking of, 9
spiritual, 5
tongue controlled by, 20, 50
Prasanta-manasam hy enam
verse quoted, 77
Prasantaam vijata-bhir
verse quoted, 45
Prayaksavagamam dharmam
quoted, 94
verse quoted, 76
Prayapa-kale manasacalena
verse quoted, 121-22
Prayapa Yami tarin kalam
verse quoted, 149
Prayatnay yatamana tu
verse quoted, 102
Praying
as Caitanya taught, 144, 148
chanting Hare Krsna as, 144
to Krsna, 117
material vs. spiritual, 112-13
See also: Meditation

Prema-bhakti platform, 118
Premajana-churita-bhakti-viluckanena
quoted, 29-30
verse quoted, 83-84
Present Age. See: Kali-yuga (present Age)
President, United States
Kennedy, J.F., 49, 114
Nixon, 114
rivals of, example of, 147
trying to become, example of, 113-14
Prostitute in Bilvamangala story, 118-19
Paja defined, 28
Puranas, 27, 28

Purification
by chanting Hare Krsna, 104
of consciousness, 101-3
going to Godhead by, 106
by Krsna consciousness, 21
of mind, 145
sacrifices for, 2
of senses, 29-30, 31, 32
See also: Liberation

Purnam adah purnam idam
quoted, 119

Purnasya purnam adaya
quoted, 30
Purusah sa parah pitha
verse quoted, 147
Purvabhyaosa tenaiva
verse quoted, 101
Pushings, six, 75

R
dadh, 10, 114
Raghunatha Bhatiga Gosvami, 82
Raghunatha dasa Gosvami, 57-59, 82
Rajavidya rajaguhya
verse quoted, 76
Rama in Hare Krsna mantra, 113, 144
Ramanujacarya, 72
Rasa defined, 10
Rasa-varj                              verse quoted, 146
Raso 'ham apsu kaunteya
verse quoted, 80
Raso vai sah
quoted, 131
Ratrim yuga-sahasranam
verse quoted, 136-37
Ratr-yagama pafiyante
verse quoted, 138
Ratr-yagama vaasah paftha
verse quoted, 138

Reality, 141
See also: Absolute Truth; Identity;
Spiritual world

Realization, spiritual. See: God realization;
Krsna consciousness; Self-realization

Reasoning power
man wasting, 134
See also: Intelligence; Knowledge

Reincarnation. See: Birth & death, repeated;
Transmigration

Religion
first-class, 109
perfection of, 76
true & false, 34
in yugas, 137
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Text Content</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>190</td>
<td><strong>THE PATH OF PERFECTION</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Index</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Salvation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See also: Kṛṣṇa, protection by; Liberation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Samādhi</strong> ( trance), 26, 64, 83, 87, 88, 96, 128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See also: Meditation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Samākāyā-sīrō-grīvām</strong> verse quoted, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Śāṁśāna-sahīṣṭhāna</strong> verse quoted, 146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See also: Sacrifice(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Śaṁśāna-sādhu-svāpna</strong> verse quoted, 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Śanākāyā-prabhāvān kāmāṁ</strong> verse quoted, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Śāntikā śānti uparāmed</strong> verse quoted, 69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Śānti-tanam</strong> defined, 140, 141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Śānti-tanam</strong>Gosvāmī, 74, 81–82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Śaṅgā śājñāvya kāmāṁ</strong> quoted, 102, 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Śaṅgā-tvāyāga sato vṛtāe</strong> verse quoted, 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Sa niścayena yokta-yaṁ</strong> verse quoted, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Śaṅkalpa-prabhāvān kāmāṁ</strong> verse quoted, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Śaṅkariteśa, 145</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Śaṅkhyā-pūrvaka-nāma-gāna-natibhiḥ</strong> quoted, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Śaṅkhya-yoga, 1, 8, 41, 48</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Śaṅkirtana parties, 69</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See also: Chanting (Hare Kṛṣṇa); Kṛṣṇa consciousness, preaching of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Sannyāsa</strong> (renunciants), 1, 2, 3, 5, 137–38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Śānti-nīrāvā-paramām</strong> quoted, 48, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Śānti-nīrāvā-paramām</strong> verse quoted, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Śārṣīt</strong> defined, 148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Śārūpya-muktā</strong> defined, 147–48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Śarva-bhātītī kauṭeya</strong> verse quoted, 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Śarva-bhūtā-stham ātmānāṁ</strong> verse quoted, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Śarva-bhūtā-sthītīm yo māṁ</strong> verse quoted, 84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Śarva-dvārāni samāyamya</strong> verse quoted, 121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Śarva-sāṅkalpa-sannyāsī</strong> verse quoted, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Śarvatāḥ varamānō ’pi</strong> verse quoted, 84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Śarva-yaṇīsā kaunteya</strong> verse quoted, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Sa samāyāsī ca yogi ca</strong> verse quoted, 1–2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Sa strī-cakrā system, 124</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Sa śāntāya</strong> defined, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Satisfaction of God realization, 17, 146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>by Kṛṣṇa consciousness, 146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See also: Enjoyment; Happiness; Peace; Pleasure; Sense gratification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Saṭya-yuga, 93, 137</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Sa vai manah kṛṣṇa-padārvindayoh</strong> quoted, 20, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Sa vai puruṣāṁ paro dharmo</strong> quoted, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Sa vai puruṣāṁ paro dharmo</strong> verse quoted, 33–34, 108–9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Śāyujja-mukti</strong> defined, 148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Scholars</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kṛṣṇa often misunderstood by, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See also: Philosophers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Scientists, material, 122, 128, 133</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See also: Philosophers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Secluded place, living in, 36–37, 38</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Seeing sun &amp; seeing Supreme, analogy of, 69</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Sel. See: Consciousness; Identity; Self-realization; Soul</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Self-realization</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>basis of, 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>by bhakti-yoga, 94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>by chanting Hare Kṛṣṇa, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>failure in, 97–100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vs. illusion, 98–99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>by Kṛṣṇa consciousness, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kṛṣṇa consciousness beyond, 83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mind controlled in, 95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Self-realization</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>person established in, 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>three ways to, 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>yoga as, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See also: God realization; Identity; Knowledge; Transcendence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Sense gratification</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>animalistic, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fruitive activities for, 15–18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vs. Kṛṣṇa consciousness, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>as material contamination, 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>material world based on, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>money used for, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>yogi renounces, 13–14, 15, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See also: Enjoyment; Happiness; Lust; Peace; Pleasure; Satisfaction; Sex life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Sense perception, Kṛṣṇa beyond, 27, 29, 143–44</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Senses</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>controlling us or controlled by us, 74–76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>of God, 30–31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>imperfect, 53, 140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in Kṛṣṇa’s service, 6, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mind above, 20, 21, 74, 144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>objects of, attraction to, 21–22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>purification of, 29–30, 31, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>service to, 114–15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ten named, 143–44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>yoga to control, 14, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>yogi’s detachment from, 121, 122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See also: Body, material; Intelligence; Mind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Service</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>material vs. spiritual, 114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See also: Devotional service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Sevomukhe hi hijhādāva</strong> quoted, 29, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>verse quoted, 27, 143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Sex life</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>for begetting children, 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>control for, 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>determination by giving up, 46–47, 67–68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gandhi gave up, 46–47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kṛṣṇa consciousness above, 146</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THE PATH OF PERFECTION

Index

Sraddhāvān bhajate yo māṁ
verse quoted, 107
Sravānāṁ kirtanāṁ viṣṇoṁ
quoted, 44
Srīdharā Svāmī, quoted on material & spiritual worlds, 141
Srīmad-Bhāgavatam
See also: Srīmad-Bhāgavatam, quotations from cited on attempts to measure the Supreme, 130 cited on spiritual sky’s residents, 141, 147 cited on sun, 149–50 cited on Supreme’s parts & parcels, 110 God’s greatness known via, 118 superexcellence of, 42–43
Srīmad-Bhāgavatam, quotations from on Ambārīṣa engaged in Lord’s service, 60–61 on danger at every step, 152 on devotees “conquering” Kṛṣṇa by hearing of Him, 129 on devotional service, unmotivated & uninterrupted, 33–34, 108–9 on devotion & detachment, 145 on fearlessness by Kṛṣṇa consciousness, 46 on impersonalists falling back to material world, 126 on Kṛṣṇa as Absolute Truth, 41–42 on Kṛṣṇa as only protector, 65 on living entity under modes of nature, 23 on Lord known by His grace, not speculation, 43 on materialists, 136 on material world, 141 on people not knowing self-interest, 141 on pious acts, promotion to perfection by, 117 on real religion, 34 on Vyāsa seeing Lord & māyā, 22–23 Śrīnīvāsa Aśārya, quoted on the six Gosvāmīs, 81–82

Śrīiti-shti-pralaya-sādhana-sākirtī ekā
verse quoted, 116–17
Staircase & yoga system, analogy of, 111
Standard of life, 16
Stars. See: Horoscope; Planets; Sun; Universe(s)
Stepladder & yoga system, analogy of, 18
Sīhānād bhrasṭaḥ patany adhāṁ quoted, 110
Sīhāne sthītiḥ śrutī-gatāṁ tuṁu-vāṁ manohīṁ
verse quoted, 129
Stotra-ratna, quoted on serving the Lord, happiness by, 66
Sucav deśe pratisthāpya
verse quoted, 37–38
Sūcīnāṁ śrīmatāṁ gehe
quoted, 118
verse quoted, 100
Suffering. See: Misery
Sūkha-śaśānta-udāśīna
verse quoted, 35
Sukham ājānīkāṁ yat tad
verse quoted, 63–64
Sukhaṁ vi yādi vā dūkkaṁ
verse quoted, 88–89
Sukhena brahma-sāṁśaṁsāṁ
verse quoted, 77
Śukla-krṣṇe gaiti hy eśe
verse quoted, 150

Sun
Kṛṣṇa compared to, 19, 22, 54, 147 location & movements of, 149–50 in spiritual sky unnecessary, 52–53, 142
Sun, seeing, & seeing Supreme Self, analogy of, 69
Sun rising & God revealing Himself, analogy of, 31
Sun’s reflections & Supersoul’s expansions, analogy of, 86–87
Supersoul (Paramātmā)
in heart of all, 86–87 Kṛṣṇa as, 65 mind controlled by, 26 soul enjoys with, 65 yogi meditates on, 84, 86, 87

Sex life (continued)
licit & illicit, 104, 105 material & spiritual, 127 yogi abstains from, 14, 45–47, 67 See also: Desires, material; Lust; Sense gratification
Shoe, seeing child’s, example of, 83 Sīkṣāstaka, quotations from on Kṛṣṇa, His holy names, & chanting, 151–52 on pure devotional attitude, 2, 112 on serving Kṛṣṇa again, 115 Sin, 35, 105 See also: Contamination, material Śīloṣa-sukha-duḥkheṣu
verse quoted, 26
Sleep, awakening from, & chanting Hare Kṛṣṇa, analogy of, 144 Sleeping, temperament in, 51, 57, 59 Snakes, deerskin repels, 46 Society, human disposing of dead body, 101 See also: Civilization, modern; Human life; Kali-yuga Society for Kṛṣṇa consciousness. See: Kṛṣṇa consciousness movement Son, submissive, & surrendered soul, analogy of, 66 Sa ‘py asti yat-prapada-simny, avicintya-tattve verse quoted, 130–31 Soul active, 8 in body, 49, 139, 143 body as disease of, 54 body developed by, 51–52 body sustained by, 124 enjoys with Supersoul, 65 eternal, 32–33, 49, 123, 143 individual, 125 intelligence, mind, & senses subordinate to, 21 māyā covering, 24 size of, 4 transmigration of, 32, 101–2 See also: Consciousness; Living entities; Spirit Souls, conditioned. See: Conditioned souls Souls, liberated, 9, 147–48 See also: Devotees, pure devotees; Mahātmā; Spiritual master Sound, transcendental. See: Hare Kṛṣṇa mantra; Om(kara)
Space travel, 122, 124 Sparrow’s determination, example of, 68 Species of life, 52, 55, 89 See also: Animals; Human life; Living entities Speculation, mental God not known by, 43, 44, 145, 147 See also: Impersonalism Spirit, 4, 5 See also: Body, spiritual; Nature, spiritual; Soul; Spiritual world Spiritual life, 7–8 See also: Advancement, spiritual; Bhakti-yoga; Devotional service; Kṛṣṇa consciousness; Religion; Yoga Spiritual master (guru) bogus vs. bona fide, 74–75 cheating, 47 disciple of, 118–19 knowledge by hearing from, 130 See also: Authority, spiritual; Devotees, pure devotees; Liberated souls; Mahātmā Spiritual world, 110 anxiety-free, 9 birth in, 106 Kṛṣṇa active in, 8 via Kṛṣṇa consciousness, 127, 128 living entities in, 141, 147 luminous, 142 material world vs, 4, 52–53, 127, 139–43, 147 philospher’s opinion of, 145 planets in, 52, 122, 123–24, 139, 142, 147–48 promotion to, 117, 122, 123–24, 125, 127 as spiritual energy, 80 See also: Goloka Vṛndāvana; Kingdom of God; Kṛṣṇa, abode of; Kṛṣṇaloka; Nature, spiritual睡
Supersoul (continued)

See also: Viṣṇu, Lord

Supreme Lord. See: God, Kṛṣṇa, Lord

(Supreme Personality of Godhead)

Surabhi cows, 127

Śvāmī defined, 74

Śvāminkrātiḥ śmi varāṁ na yāce quoted, 16

Śvarūpā Dāmodara, quoted on Raghunātha’s renunciation, 58

T

Tad ahaṁ bhakty-upaḥṛtam
verse quoted, 30

Tad eva mē dāraśya deva rūpaṁ
verse quoted, 115

Tamas mā jyotir gama
quoted, 142

Tad eva vidīvaṁ mṛtyum eti quoted, 54

Tat tāṁ niyamam āsthyā
verse quoted, 108

Tatvidyād duḥkha-samyojakriya
verse quoted, 64

Tapaśvībhāya ‘dhika yogi
verse quoted, 88

Tatparaśāya ‘dhīka yogi
verse quoted, 106

Tāsāṁ brahma mahad yonir
verse quoted, 52

Tasmāt sarvesu kāleṣu
verse quoted, 150–51

Taste, material vs. spiritual, 10

Tāṣāyām na prāṇaśyāmi
verse quoted, 81

Tāṣāyāṁ nigrāham manye
verse quoted, 94

Tāṣāyām sulaḥkāḥ pāṁtha
quoted, 128–29

verse quoted, 128

Tatas tato niyamayād
verse quoted, 73

Tato māṁ taittirīya jñātvā
verse quoted, 44, 112

THE PATH OF PERFECTION

Tatra cāndramasāṁ jyotir
verse quoted, 150

Tatraikāraṁ manah kṛtvā
verse quoted, 37–38

Tatra prāyādī gacchānti
verse quoted, 149

Tatra tām buddhi-samyogam
verse quoted, 100

Tat sādhau mane ‘sura-varya dehiniṁ
quoted, 49

Teacher, spiritual. See: Spiritual master

Te dvandva-moha-nirmuktā
verse quoted, 104

Tejo-vīri-mṛdiṁyathī vinimayo yatra tri-sarga ‘mṛśa
verse quoted, 41–42

Temple, Kṛṣṇa, 38

Teṣāṁ evānukampārtham
verse quoted, 44

Time, mūḍha wastes, 15, 16

Time on higher planets, 123

Times to pass from world, 149–51

Tongue

as instrument to become Kṛṣṇa conscious, 119

prasāda controls, 20, 50

as pushing agent, 75

Touchstone (cintāmaṇi), 127

Trance (samādhi), 26, 64, 83, 87, 88, 96, 128

See also: Meditation

Transcendence

deviation from, 99

person situated in, 26, 60

See also: Godhead, returning to;
Liberation; Self-realization;
Spiritual world

Transcendentalist

compared to lamp in windless place, 63

God’s kingdom attained by, 48

indestructible, 100

instructions for, 36–37

perfecting consciousness from previous life, 100–101

See also: Devotees; Impersonalists;
Jñānis; Yogs

Transmigration of the soul, 32, 101–2

See also: Birth & death, repeated;
Bondage, material

Tree, seeing Kṛṣṇa in, example of, 82–83

Trees, desire, 127

Tretā-yuga, 93, 137

Truth

searching for, compared to buying gold, 31

See also: Absolute Truth

Tvad-antah samsāyasya
verse quoted, 99

Tvākṛtvā dehāṁ punar janma
verse quoted, 106

Tvāktvā tūrnam asēva-mandala-pati-śreṇīṁ
sādā tucchat
verse quoted, 81–82

U

Uddhāreṇ āṁśām āṁśām
verse quoted, 18

Universal form of the Supreme, 115–16

Universal vision, 83, 89

Universe(s)

creation & destruction continual in, 137–38
duration of, 137

Lord controls, 113

Mahā-Viṣṇu exhales & inhales, 85–86

planetary systems in, 135–36

sun center of, 149–50
temporary, 41–42

yogī travels, 122, 124

See also: Creation, the; Material world;
Nature, material

Upadeśāmṛta, quotations from
on bhakti-yoga, success in, 68

on spiritual master, qualification of, 74–75

Upaśītā śānta-rajasaṁ
verse quoted, 77

Upāvīṣṭaṁśe taittirīyā”
verse quoted, 37–38

USA. See: America

Utsāhāṁ niśka yād dhairyāt
verse quoted, 68

V

Vācō vegam manasaṁ kroḍha-vegam
verse quoted, 75

Vaikunṭha defined, 9

See also: Spiritual world

Vaśṇavas. See: Devotees

Vaśṇavism, 117, 148

Vārāha-kalpataruḥya ca
verse quoted, 70

Vandanaṁ defined, 44

Vasudeva, 41

Vaśyāṁ tāṁ tu yatam
verse quoted, 95

Veda defined, 43

Veda-mātā defined, 53

Vedānta-sūtra, quotations from,
on Absolute Truth, 28, 41, 43

on God’s blissfulness, 9

Vedas, 53

Vedic literature

cOMpared to doctor’s prescription, 28

God’s senses explained in, 30

planets described in, 122, 123

See also: Bhagavad-gītā; Srimad-Bhāgavatam; Vedas; other specific Vedic literatures

Vegam defined, 75

Vetīj yatra na caivaṁyaṁ
verse quoted, 63–64

Vināśam avyayasya
verse quoted, 143

Viṣayā vinirvartante
verse quoted, 146

Viṣṇu, Lord

all-pervading, 88

Kṛṣṇa origin of, 45, 53, 84–85, 86, 94

meditation on, 45, 47–48, 124

as yoga’s aim, 94

See also: Garbhodakasāyī Viṣṇu;
Kṣīrodakasāyī Viṣṇu; Mahā-Viṣṇu; Supersoul
THE PATH OF PERFECTION

Yadā vinijayatam citram
verse quoted, 59-60

Yad gatvā na nivartante
quoted, 142

Yad prajñā tyajan deham
verse quoted, 124

Yah sa sarvesvabhuṣtu
quoted, 141

Yaṁ prāpya na nivartante
verse quoted, 139

Yaṁ idam paramam guhyam
verse quoted, 70

Yajnas. See: Sacrifices

verse quoted, 3

Ye bhajanti tu mam bhaktya

verse quoted, 119

Ye śamśāna jīva
verse quoted, 23

Ye bhajanti tu mām bhaktya
verse quoted, 66

Ye 'naye 'ravindākṣa vimukta-māṇinas
verse quoted, 126

Yeśāṁ tv anta-gatam pāparṁ
verse quoted, 104

Yoga

Yatoparamate cītāṁ
verse quoted, 63-64

Yat satyayāvāṁ miṁyāṁ
quoted, 141

Yāyā sammohito jīva
verse quoted, 23

verse quoted, 288

Yoga
elemental attempts at, 73

attainment of, 14-16

in Bhagavad-gītā, 1

as cleansing off contamination, 103

compared to ladder, 18

compared to staircase, 111

defined, 13, 15, 16, 121

deduction from spiritual activities, 121, 122

eight stages of, 14

failure in, 99-100

first instruction in, 55

God as goal of, 18, 36

in Kali-yuga, 92-94

Krṣṇa consciousness perfection of, 1, 18, 24, 54, 88, 96, 107

Krṣṇa describes, 45

Krṣṇa objective of, 50

love for God perfects, 109

material desire absent in, 60, 61

material existence ended by, 50

mind controlled in, 19-20, 23, 25, 60, 63-64, 73, 74, 75, 95

moderation in, 54

neophyte & perfectional stages of, 14

perfection of, 3-4, 14-15, 17, 19, 24, 47, 54, 60-61, 63-64, 76, 94, 95, 97-98, 106-7, 111

in previous life & present practice, 102

purpose of, 36, 45, 54, 94, 97-98, 124

renunciation as, 13

as self-realization, 73

for sense control, 14, 20

sex forbidden in, 14

sitting place for, 37-38

Yoga

"societies" for, 38, 45-46, 50, 93, 95, 96, 98

stages of, 111

ture & false, 45-47

Vishnu aim of, 94

yoga attaining, 60

See also: Črṣṇa consciousness; Meditation; Transcendence; specific types of yoga

Yogāc calitā-māṇasah
quoted, 99

Yoga induvā-samāyama
quoted, 20

Yogārādhaya tasyaiva
verse quoted, 14

Yogī(ś)
detached from sensual activities, 121, 122
determination required for, 68-69
devotee best among, 78, 87

devotee more compassionate than, 69-70

false, 14

fearedness required for, 46
greatness of, 106-7

happiness of, 77

in India, 38, 46, 72

leaving material world forever, 133

liberation demanded by, 113

Lord's abode reached by, 53

material desires absent in, 16

meditates on Supersoul, 84, 86, 87

on mental plane, 131

mind to be controlled by, 74

oneness with Supreme wanted by, 3

passing away & returning, 150

perfection example of, 1, 3, 88-89

planetary transfer by, 122, 124, 125

powers of, 3

practicing to perfection, 102

renounces sense gratification, 13-14, 15, 18

sees Črṣṇa everywhere, 78, 79-80

sees Lord within himself, 84

selfish desires of, 3

self-satisfied, 69-70

sex forbidden for, 45-47, 67

Yeśāṁ tv anta-gatam pāparṁ
verse quoted, 104

Ye bhajanti tu mām bhaktya
verse quoted, 66

Ye 'naye 'ravindākṣa vimukta-māṇinas
verse quoted, 126

Ye śamśāna jīva
verse quoted, 23

Ye bhajanti tu mām bhaktya
verse quoted, 66

verse quoted, 23
THE PATH OF PERFECTION

Yugas (continued)
sitting place for, 37–38
symptoms of, 26
topmost type of, 107, 128
unsuccessful, 100, 106
yoga attained by, 60
See also: Devotees; Transcendentalists

Yoginām api sarveśāṁ
verse quoted, 107
Yogīnām api sarveśāṁ
verse quoted, 81
Yo 'yamyogas tvaya prokta!
Yo math pasyati sarvatra
Yogino yufl}ita satatam
Yoginīm a pi sarveśiim
Yogis (continued)
verse quoted, 198
Yoga
symptoms of, 26
sitting place for, 37-38
topmost type of, 60
attained by, 60
Devotees; Transcendentalists
See also:
verse quoted, 48
verse quoted, 26

Zero, God cannot be, 43
Yo'jann evam sadāṁnām
Yo'jann evam sadāṁnām
Yuktiihiira-vihiirasya
Yuktiihiira-vihiirasya

Z

Yukāhāra-vidhārasya
verse quoted, 51, 57
Yukta ity ucyate yogy
verse quoted, 26
Yukta-sapnābhabodhasya
verse quoted, 51, 57
Yujfann evam sadāṁnām (Bg. 6.15)
verse quoted, 48
Yujfann evam sadāṁnām (Bg. 6.28)
verse quoted, 77

See also: Void, the
LATIN AMERICA


FARMS: Feira de Santana, Bahia (Chacara Hridayayanda)—BR 324, Km 99, Pindamonhangaba, Sao Paulo (New Gokula)—Riberia Grande CP 108. 12400


NORTH AMERICA


FARM: Hemingford, Quebec (New Nandagram)—315 Backbrush Rd. RR No. 2. JOL 1H0 / (514)247-3429


greatest modern exponents of yoga and of the Indian spiritual tradition. Śrīla Prabhupāda’s talks, based upon the Bhagavad-gītā, probe deeply into questions concerning the nature of consciousness, meditation, karma, death, and reincarnation, and reveal clearly how even those of us entangled in the complexity and chaos of modern materialistic life can begin a simple practice that elevates our consciousness and puts us in touch with the Supreme Consciousness.

Śrīla Prabhupāda (1896–1977) was a true spiritual genius who succeeded in articulating the essence of India’s perennial and universal spiritual wisdom in a form easily comprehensible and sublimely practicable for twentieth century mankind. His unique genius inspired Sri Lal Bahadur Shastri, the late prime minister of India, to declare that the writings of Śrīla Prabhupāda “are a significant contribution to the salvation of mankind.” This new publication, The Path of Perfection, is destined to become a classic.
It's not about what most people think yoga is. For most of us, the term conjures in the mind an image of some skinny, half-naked fellow contorted into a human pretzel, or perhaps a room full of corpulent matrons in black leotards, struggling to stand on their heads in hopes of improving their health, losing weight, or increasing their waning sexual powers.

The Path of Perfection offers a brilliant exposition on the path of bhakti-yoga, a simple but all-inclusive form of yoga for the modern age. Even those who are entangled in the complexity and chaos of modern materialistic life can begin a simple practice that purifies the mind and elevates the consciousness.

In The Path of Perfection, the world's most distinguished teacher of Vedic culture and philosophy, His Divine Grace A. C. Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda, frees us from the meaninglessness that threatens our individual and collective sanity.